

**VOL. 6**



**WIN**  
€ 250 / \$ 275  
see page 144



# **SECRETS OF OPENING SURPRISES**

**JEROEN BOSCH**  
EDITOR

**VOL. 6**



**Too smart to study main lines? Shock your opponent with an SOS!**

**NEW IN CHESS**



## **SOS – Secrets of Opening Surprises 6**



# SECRETS OF OPENING SURPRISES

## 6

**Edited by**  
**JEROEN BOSCH**

### **Contributing authors**

Ian Rogers  
Sergey Tiviakov  
Jeroen Bosch  
Erwin I'Ami  
John Donaldson  
Jeremy Silman  
Arthur Kogan  
Adrian Mikhalchishin  
Glenn Flear  
Dorian Rogozenko  
John van der Wiel

**2007 New In Chess – The Netherlands**



© 2007 New In Chess

Published by New In Chess, Alkmaar, The Netherlands

[www.newinchess.com](http://www.newinchess.com)

Appears twice a year

A previous version of Chapter 7 has appeared  
in New In Chess Magazine.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission from the publisher.

Cover design and lay-out: Steven Boland

Drawing on frontcover: Zander Dekker

Printing: A-D Druk BV, Zeist, The Netherlands

Translation: Ken Neat (Chapters 8 and 13)

Production: Joop de Groot

Proofreading: René Olthof

Printed in the Netherlands

ISBN-10: 90-5691-193-7

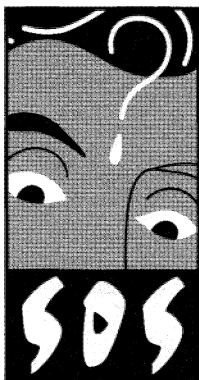
ISBN-13: 978-90-5691-193-5



# Contents

1	Jeroen Bosch	The SOS Files	9
2	Ian Rogers	Triple Trouble for the Grünfeld	16
3	Jeroen Bosch	Sicilian: the Aussie Attack	24
4	Erwin I'Ami	No Panov – Play an Early Queen Move	31
5	Donaldson and Silman	3.h4 in the Hyper-Accelerated Dragon	39
6	Arthur Kogan	The Tarzan Attack	51
7	Jeroen Bosch	Making Short Work of the Najdorf	59
8	Adrian Mikhalchishin	The Döry Defence	68
9	Glenn Flear	Bishops First Please!	73
10	Jeroen Bosch	The Chigorin Attack	80
11	Arthur Kogan	The Queen's Grünfeld Line (Part I)	88
12	Arthur Kogan	The Queen's Grünfeld Line (Part II)	97
13	Adrian Mikhalchishin	A Spanish SOS	104
14	Jeroen Bosch	The French Advance with 5...a6	107
15	Dorian Rogozenko	A Slav Surprise	117
16	Sergey Tiviakov	Scandinavian with 3...♙d6	123
17	John van der Wiel	Caro-Kann with a Slav Touch	135
18	Who is Who?	Authors and their Subjects	143

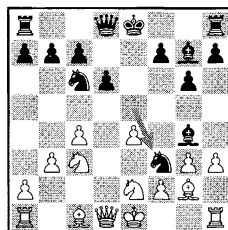




## CHAPTER 1 - page 9

*Jeroen Bosch*

**The SOS Files**

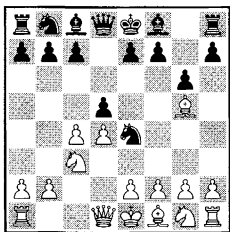


Ippolito-Ivanov, after 11...♘f3+

## CHAPTER 2 - page 16

*Ian Rogers*

**Triple Trouble for the Grünfeld**

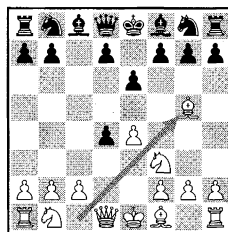


Take my Bishop after 5.h4, 5.cxd5 and 5.♖c1

## CHAPTER 3 - page 24

*Jeroen Bosch*

**Sicilian: the Aussie Attack**

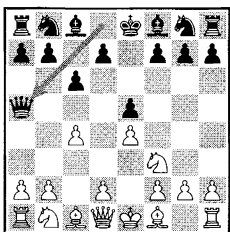


1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♙g5

## CHAPTER 4 - page 31

*Erwin l'Ami*

**No Panov – Play an Early Queen Move**

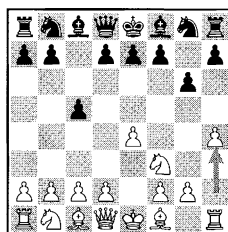


1.c4 c6 2.e4 e5 3.♘f3 ♖a5

## CHAPTER 5 - page 39

*John Donaldson and Jeremy Silman*

**3.h4 in the Hyper-Accelerated Dragon**



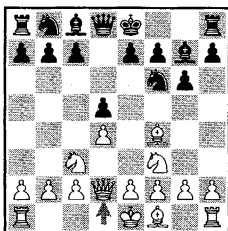
1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 g6 3.h4



## CHAPTER 6 - page 51

*Arthur Kogan*

### The Tarzan Attack

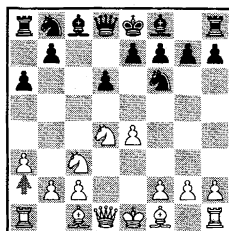


1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 g6 3.♙c3 d5 4.♙f4 ♙g7 5.♖d2

## CHAPTER 7 - page 59

*Jeroen Bosch*

### Making Short Work of the Najdorf

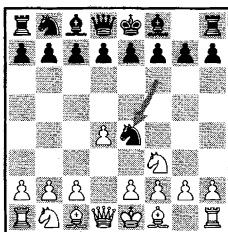


6.a3 – cheekily echoing 5...a6

## CHAPTER 8 - page 68

*Adrian Mikhalchishin*

### The Döry Defence

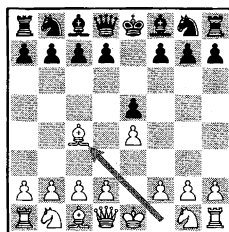


1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 ♙e4

## CHAPTER 9 - page 73

*Glenn Flear*

### Bishops First Please!

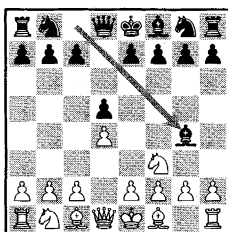


Early queen moves after 1.e4 e5 2.♙c4

## CHAPTER 10 - page 80

*Jeroen Bosch*

### The Chigorin Attack

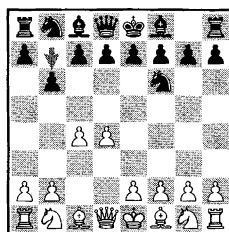


1.d4 d5 2.♘f3 ♙g4!?

## CHAPTER 11 - page 88

*Arthur Kogan*

### The Queen's Grünfeld Line (Part I)



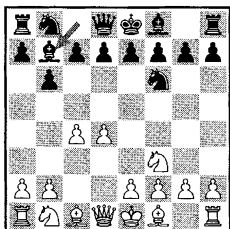
1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6



## CHAPTER 12 - page 97

*Arthur Kogan*

### The Queen's Grünfeld Line (Part II)

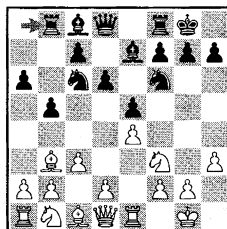


1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6 3.♘f3 ♙b7

## CHAPTER 13 - page 104

*Adrian Mikhalchishin*

### A Spanish SOS

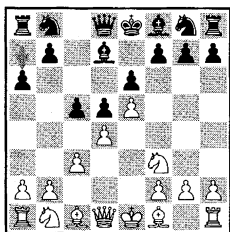


Gajewski's 9...♖b8!?

## CHAPTER 14 - page 107

*Jeroen Bosch*

### The French Advance with 5...a6

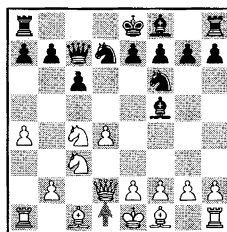


Exchanging the French Bishop

## CHAPTER 15 - page 117

*Dorian Rogozenko*

### A Slav Surprise

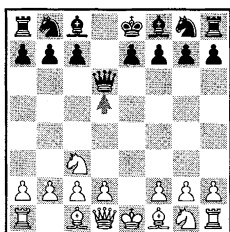


Facing 7...♖c7 with 8.♖d2

## CHAPTER 16 - page 123

*Sergey Tiviakov*

### Scandinavian with 3...♖d6

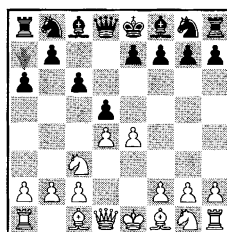


A slip of the hand?

## CHAPTER 17 - page 135

*John van der Wiel*

### Caro-Kann with a Slav Touch



1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.♘c3 a6



# CHAPTER 1

## Jeroen Bosch

### The SOS Files

#### Best by Test

*SOS-1, Chapter 15, p.121*

In SOS-1 I recommended 3...c5 versus the Trompowsky. Recently I had the good fortune to be able to test this line in practice. The result of the opening was beyond my – already high – expectations.

□ Juan Manuel Bellon Lopez

■ Jeroen Bosch

Germany Bundesliga 2005/06

**1.d4 ♘f6 2.♙g5 e6 3.e4 c5 4.e5**

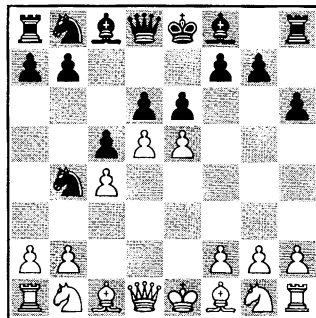
An alternative is 4.d5 when 4...d6 5.♘c3 ♙e7 is safest. Instead, 4...h6!? 5.♙xf6 ♗xf6 6.♘c3 is somewhat better for White, as I mentioned in SOS-1. Yet, the game Rodriguez-Panno, Villa Martelli 2006, was quickly drawn after: 6...a6 7.♘f3 d6 8.dxe6 ♙xe6 9.♙e2 ♘c6 10.0-0 ♙e7 11.♘d5 ♙xd5 12.exd5 ♘d4 13.♘xd4 ♗xd4 14.♗xd4 cxd4 15.♖fe1 ♘d8. Risky for Black is 4...♗b6 5.♘c3 ♗xb2 6.♙d2 (again quoting from SOS-1). This verdict was borne out in practice: 6...♗b6 7.f4 and now 7...d6 8.♖b1 ♗c7 9.♙b5+ ♙d7 10.♗e2 gives White dangerous compensation, Karttunen-Vocaturo, Turin ol 2006. Interestingly, 4.♘f3 cxd4 5.e5 transposes to Chapter 3 in this volume, the Aussie Attack!

**4...h6 5.♙c1 ♘d5**

The odd 5...♘h7!? remains a popular alternative. Black was fine in Szymanski-

Bologan, Warsaw rapid 2005, after 6.d5 (in my opinion Trompowsky players should investigate 6.dxc5) 6...d6 7.♘c3 exd5 8.♗xd5 ♘c6 9.♙b5 ♗c7 (this is stronger than 9...dxe5?! 10.♗xe5+ ♙e6 11.♙xh6! ♘f6 12.♙g5± Reddmann-Kekelidze, Hamburg 2006) 10.♙f4 ♙e6 11.♗e4 d5 12.♗e2 a6 13.♙xc6+ ♗xc6 14.♘f3 ♙e7.

**6.c4 ♘b4 7.d5** Ambitious. 7.dxc5 is the alternative. **7...d6**



Making full contact with the enemy. White runs the risk that the centre will be fully liquidated, when Black will have an edge in development.

**8.a3 ♘a6 9.♘f3?!**

This does not work out well for White. If White hopes to gain anything he should try 9.♙f4 dxe5 10.♙xe5 ♘d7 11.♗a4 ♗g5 12.f4 ♗g6 13.♘f3 ♙e7 14.♘c3 0-0 15.d6 ♙d8 16.0-0-0 f6 17.f5 exf5 18.♙g3± Karttunen-Sepp, Finland 2003/04.

The stem game went 9.exd6 ♙xd6 10.♘c3



0-0 11.♔d3 ♘c7 12.♙ge2 exd5 13.cxd5 ♘d7 14.0-0 ♘f6. Clearly White's strategy has failed. Pawn d5 is weak and Black has the much easier game, Nakamura-Yudasin, New York 2001, see SOS-1.

### 9...dxe5 10.♙xe5 ♔d6

This simple move is best. The ambitious 10...♙d7 can be met by the piece sacrifice 11.♙xf7!? ♙xf7 12.dxe6+ ♙xe6. White has a forced draw with 13.♚d5+ ♙f6 14.♚f3+ ♙e7 15.♚e4+ ♙f7 16.♚d5+ ♙f6. However, it makes sense to continue with 13.♔c3 or 13.♙e2 with decent compensation in view of the 'central' position of Black's king!

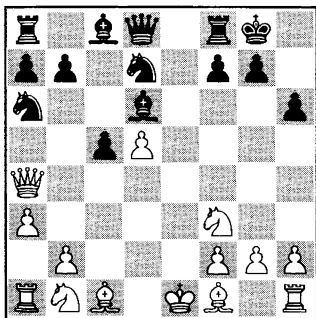
### 11.♚a4+?!

This check merely helps Black. The ignominious retreat 11.♙f3 was comparatively best. White is also in trouble after 11.♙f4 0-0 12.dxe6 ♙xe6, as 13.♙xf7? fails to 13...♚xf7 14.♚xd6 (14.♙xd6 ♔d7) 14...♚f6! and Black is winning.

### 11...♙d7 12.♙f3

Admitting the failure of his opening strategy. If 12.dxe6, then 12...♙xe5 13.exd7+ ♙xd7+.

### 12...exd5 13.cxd5 0-0



Black has a clear edge in development, while pawn d5 is weak and White's queen badly positioned on a4. This is enough for a distinct advantage.

### 14.♙c3

White should perhaps have settled for 14.♙xa6 ♘b6 15.♚c2 bxa6 16.0-0.

### 14...♙c7 15.♙e3

White more or less loses a pawn after the natural 15.♙e2 ♘b6 (15...♙f6) 16.♚d1 ♔e8 17.0-0 (what else?) 17...♙cxd5 18.♙xd5 ♙xd5, when White cannot take back: 19.♚xd5?? ♙xh2+.

### 15...♙f6 16.♔d1

Also unattractive is 16.0-0 a6 (16...♙g4 17.♙e4 ♙xe3 18.fxe3 ♚) 17.♚c2 b5 ♚.

### 16...♔e8

Black's position plays itself. It is sufficient to complete development to show up the defects in White's game.

### 17.♚h4

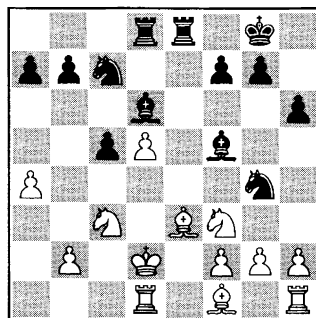
17.♙e2 is strongly met by 17...♙g4.

### 17...♙f5 18.a4?

White should have tried 18.♙d3, when he is worse after 18...♚d7 19.0-0 ♙fxd5. The natural 18.♙e2 loses after 18...b5! (this explains White's 18th move in the game) 19.0-0 (19.♙xb5 ♘xb5 20.♙xb5 ♔e4—+; 19.♙xb5 ♙xb5 20.♙xb5 ♔e4—+) 19...b4 20.axb4 cxb4 21.♙b5 ♙xb5 22.♙xb5 ♔e4.

### 18...♙g4! 19.♚xd8 ♔axd8 20.♙d2?

20.♙e2 ♙xe3 21.fxe3 ♔xe3 also loses.



20...♙xf2! A neat tactic that wins on the spot. 21.♙c4 Not 21.♙xf2 ♙f4+.

21...♙g4! Even stronger than 21...♙xh1. Black wins the exchange on his own terms following 22.♔d(h)e1 ♙xe3 23.♔xe3 ♙f4. White therefore resigned.



## A Boring Draw?

*SOS-3, Chapter 3, p.28.*

**Confronted with the blunt 4.h4, Bolzoni replies in Grünfeld style to score a ... draw!**

**□ Pavel Govciyan**

■ **Victor-Angel Bolzoni**

Nancy 2006

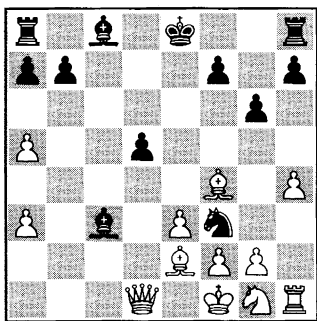
1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 d5 4.h4 c6  
5.cxd5 cxd5 6.♙f4 ♘c6 7.e3 ♙g7  
8.♙e2

This was my recommendation in SOS-3. The game Bosboom-Sokolov, Leeuwarden 1997, went instead 8.h5 0-0 (8...♖xh5) 9.hxg6 hxg6 10.♖f3 ♖b6.

8... ♔a5 9.a3

Now Black has an excellent reply to keep equal chances. In case of 9.♘f3 White would no longer threaten h5.

9...♘e4 10.♖c1 e5! 11.dxe5 ♘xc3  
12.♗xc3 ♘xe5 13.b4 ♘f3+! 14.♔f1  
♙xc3 15.bxa5



**15...♘d2+ 16.♔e1**

 $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$ 

## Weekend Short Circuit

*SOS-1, Chapter 1, p.10*

Gunsberg's Four Knights can be tricky. In the following game Black quickly lost his way.

**□ David Smerdon**

■ **Robert Ris**

Tilburg 2006

**1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.a3  
♞d6?!**

Original, but not very logical. White can now deploy his bishop on c4 in one go. In case of 4...♙b5 ♙d6, 5.a3 is a useful waiting move when White will retreat his bishop to c4 if he can.

**5. ♖c4 0-0 6.d3 h6?**

This is similar (but worse) to our 4.♟b5 ♟d6 SOS line. Not only is White's bishop better placed on c4, Black has also made the mistake of playing both ...0-0 and ...h6 while White has not yet castled. He is simply asking for:

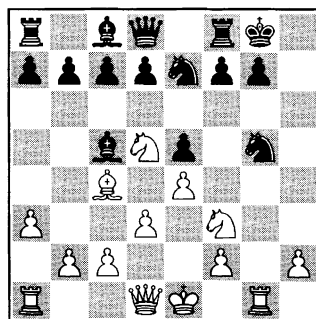
**7.g4! ♘h7 8.g5! hxg5**

White is also better after 8...♘xg5 9.♗xg5  
hxg5 and now either 10.♖g1 ♕e7 11.♗d5, or  
10.h4 gxh4 11.♖h5 ♗d4 12.♗f1 ♕e7  
13.♗d5 ♗e6 14.♗xe7+ ♖xe7 15.♖xh4 f6  
16.f4 exf4 17.♕xf4.

9.♖q1 ♜c5

If 9...♗e7 then 10.♘d5.

10. d5 e7 11. xg5 xg5?!



The game, played in a weekend congress, now had a curious finish.

**12.  xg5?**

Immediately over was 12.♘f6+! gxf6



(12...♖h8 13.♜xg5+—) 13.♜xg5 winning!

**12...♜xd5 13.♞h5**

And Black resigned – a little too soon. In case of 13...♜f6 White has to find 14.♙xf7+ ♜xf7 15.♞xf7+ ♖h8 16.♞g3 d6 17.♜e6 ♞g8 18.♞h3+ ♜h7 19.♞xh7+! ♞xh7 20.♜g5 ♙e6! 21.♜xe6, when he should indeed win.

## Shereshevsky's Albin

*SOS-2, Chapter 5, p.38*

In the SOS series we have mainly looked at Morozevich's 4.♜f3 ♜c6 5.g3 ♜ge7!?, but Shereshevsky's old suggestion of 4.a3 can be annoying to meet in practice and deserves some attention.

□ Jonathan Parker

■ Nick Pert

Swansea ch-GBR 2006

### 1.d4 d5 2.c4 e5 3.dxe5 d4 4.a3

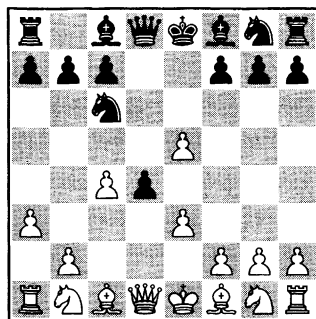
An insipid little move, or is it? White does not develop a piece, but controls the b4-square. The real idea is the follow-up with 5.e3 to return the gambit pawn for a slightly better ending. A clever psychological approach, for we don't play the Albin to defend a slightly inferior ending now, do we?

#### 4...♜c6

In his *Chess for Zebras*, Jonathan Rowson mentions that 4...c5 is probably best met by 5.e3 (5.e4 was Shereshevsky's suggestion, when Rowson likes 5...♜c6 6.f4 g5 with unclear play) 5...♜c6 6.♜f3 ♙g4 7.♙e2.

#### 5.e3

The main idea. White does not defend the e5-pawn. He will exchange queens after a future ...dxe3, when Black's king will be exposed in the centre.



#### 5...♜ge7

Let's continue in the spirit of Morozevich! Please carefully study 5...dxe3 to convince yourself that the ending really is troublesome for Black – this may be counter-intuitive. Other possibilities are 5...♙e6 and 5...a5.

● Very sensible looks 5...dxe3 6.♞xd8+ ♜xd8 7.♙e3 ♜xe5, for, with the queens off, is it really so dangerous for the king on d8? Shereshevsky is adamant and gives the astonishing: 8.♜f3! (I am not too convinced that 8.♜c3 ♙e6 gives Black sufficient counterplay, as Shereshevsky argues. At least in the game Ljubojevic-Martens, Enschede 2006, White always looked better: 9.0-0-0 ♜c8 10.♜d5 c6 11.♜f4 ♙g4 – 11...♙xc4 12.♜f3 ♜xf3 13.♙xc4 ♜e5 14.♙b3 with a big lead in development in an open position – 12.f3 ♙d7 13.♜gh3 ♜h6 14.♜g5 ♜f5 15.♙f2 ♙e7 16.♜e4 ♜c7 17.♜h5! ♞hg8 18.♙e2 b6?? – overlooking White's threat – 19.f4 ♜g6 20.♞xd7+! ♜xd7 21.♙g4 ♜c7 22.♙xf5 and White is winning) 8...♜xf3+ 9.gxf3. In *Chess for Zebras* Rowson develops this line with 9...♙e6 10.♜c3 ♜c8 11.0-0-0 ♜f6 12.♜e4 ♜d7?! 13.♜g5 when he concludes that White's advantage is becoming tangible.

● 5...♙e6 6.♜f3 (not 6.exd4? ♞xd4 7.♞xd4 ♜xd4 with great problems for White due to the weakness of square b3)



6...dxe3 7. ♖xd8+ ♜xd8 8. ♙xe3 ♗ge7 and now:

– 9. ♗c3 a6 10. ♗g5 ♗xe5 11. ♗xe6 fxe6 12. ♜d1 ♜xd1+ 13. ♗xd1 ♗7c6 (stronger is 13... ♗f5!?, Ward) 14. f4 ♗g4 15. ♙g1 e5 16. ♙e2 ♗f6 17. fxe5 ♗xe5 18. ♙d4 ♗c6 19. ♙e3 ♙d6 20. ♙f3 ♗d7 with approximate equality in Agrest-Glenne, Bergen 2001.

– 9. ♗c3 ♗g6 10. ♗b5 ♜d7 11. ♗bd4 ♗gxe5 12. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 13. ♗xe6 fxe6 14. ♙e2 ♗d3+ 15. ♙xd3 ♜xd3 16. ♗e2 ♜d8± Farago-Mestel, Belgrade 1982.

– 9. ♗g5 ♗f5 10. ♗xe6 fxe6 11. ♙g5 ♙e7 12. ♙xe7 ♗xe7 and Black's chances were already preferable in Sbarra-Marchio, Corsico 1996.

– 9. ♗bd2 ♗g6 10. ♗g5 ♗gxe5 11. ♗xe6 fxe6 12. h3 ♗d3+ 13. ♙xd3 ♜xd3 (compare this ending to the one in Farago-Mestel. White is always better because of Black's fractured pawn structure, but it may not be all that much. So 5... ♙e6 is a safe escape route, albeit one which may not be that attractive for Black) 14. ♗e2 ♜d7 15. b4 ♗d4+ 16. ♙xd4 ♜xd4 17. ♜ac1 ♙e7 18. ♗f3 ♜d8 19. ♜hd1 ♜xd1 20. ♜xd1 ♙f6 and Black managed to draw in Leitao-Mekhitarian, Santos 2006.

● 5...a5 6. ♗f3 ♙c5 7. exd4 and now Black should analyse Rowson's 7... ♙xd4!? rather than 7... ♗xd4 8. ♙e3 ♙g4 9. ♙e2 which is just a pawn down.

### 6. ♗f3

6. exd4 ♖xd4± is the point, when after 7. ♖xd4 ♗xd4 the weakening of the b3-square means that White is already lost.

### 6... ♙g4 7. ♙e2

Now Black must act, since 8. ♗xd4 is a threat.

### 7... dxe3

Finally allowing the ending. This is stronger than Polugaevsky's old recommendation of 7... ♗f5, when 8. exd4 ♙xf3 9. ♙xf3 ♗fxd4 10. 0-0 clearly favours White.

### 8. ♖xd8+ ♜xd8 9. ♙xe3

Now Black must make up his mind between 9... ♗f5 and retrieving the pawn with:

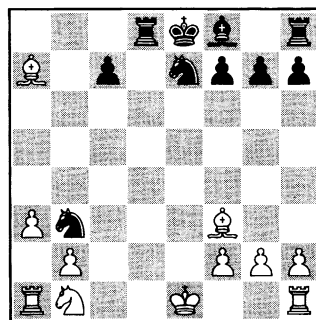
### 9... ♙xf3

Pert must have calculated the game continuation until the repetition. 9... ♗f5 10. ♙g5 ♙e7 11. ♙xe7 ♗xe7 12. ♗bd2 ♙xf3 13. ♗xf3 ♗fd4 is fine too.

### 10. ♙xf3 ♗xe5 11. ♙xb7

11. ♙e2 ♗f5 is somewhat better for Black.

### 11... ♗xc4 12. ♙xa7 ♗a5! 13. ♙f3 ♗b3



Ironically Black keeps the balance, due to the weakness of b3 – the culprit is 4.a3!

### 14. ♜a2 ♗c1 15. ♜a1 ♗b3 16. ♜a2 ♗c1 17. ♜a1 ½-½

## Ivanov wins with Indian SOS

*SOS-4, Chapter 12, p.96*

The winner of the SOS Prize is Alexander Ivanov, for the following win over Dean Ippolito at the 2006 World Open.

□ Dean Ippolito

■ Alexander Ivanov

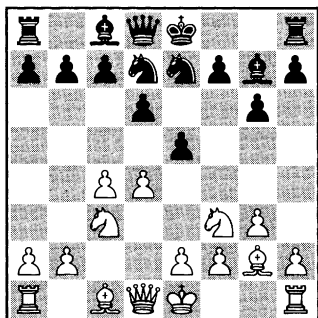
Philadelphia 2006

### 1. d4 g6 2. ♗f3 ♙g7 3. c4 d6 4. g3 ♗d7 5. ♙g2 e5 6. ♗c3 ♗e7

This system, favoured by Zurab Azmaiparashvili (among others), was dubbed an



‘Indian SOS’ by Dorian Rogozenko. Black is playing a kind of King’s Indian, but with his knight on e7 rather than on f6. This increases Black’s control over the dark squares. Not only does the knight not block the a1-h8 diagonal, but it can also be moved to c6 (after ...exd4), to attack the d4-square.



### 7.e4?!

It is telling that this seemingly logical move is already a serious inaccuracy. White must castle first, before playing e4. After 7.0-0 0-0 8.e4 Black continues with 8...exd4 9.♟xd4 ♜c6 when Rogozenko’s main line went 10.♞de2 a5. As Rogozenko points out, it is more subtle to preserve the option of playing ...♞c5 or ...♞de5 for the moment. White’s best move is 11.h3 when 11...♞c5 12.♙e3 leads to a position where SOS-4 considers two moves: 12...♞e8 and 12...♙e6. In Murshed-Rahman, Dhaka 2006, the latter was tested. Black had good compensation after 12...♙e6 13.b3 ♜c8 (for 13...a4 14.♞b1 axb3 15.axb3 f5 see SOS-4) 14.♞h2 f5 15.exf5 ♙xf5 16.♙xc5!? dxc5 17.♞d5+ ♞h8 18.♞xc5 ♞b4, with excellent counterplay.

### 7...exd4!

Ivanov takes advantage of Ippolito’s mistake with an energetic sequence. He will only castle when all other useful moves are exhausted.

**8.♞xd4 ♞c6 9.♞de2**

So, now 9...0-0 10.0-0 would transpose to the main line mentioned above. However, the tactical dangers that White is facing in this line are illustrated by the fact that Black can now grasp the initiative with

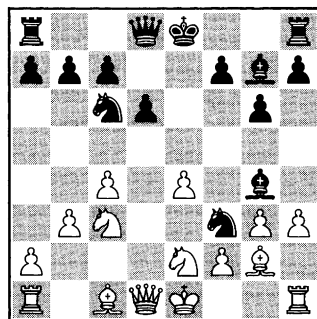
**9...♞de5!**

If both sides have castled, this knight sortie gains nothing, because of b3 followed by f3 (in reply to ...♙g4).

**10.b3 ♙g4 11.h3**

In case of 11.0-0 ♞f3+ White has to give up his fianchetto bishop with 12.♙xf3, since 12.♞h1? loses material to 12...♙xc3 13.♞xc3 ♞xh2.

**11...♞f3+**



**12.♞f1 ♙xc3 13.♞b1**

White has no choice. He will win back the piece, but his position is in disarray. Of course, he loses the queen after 13.♞xc3? ♞h2+, and an exchange after 13.hxg4? ♙xa1 14.♙xf3.

**13...♞h2+!**

Creating further disharmony in White’s camp.

**14.♙g1**

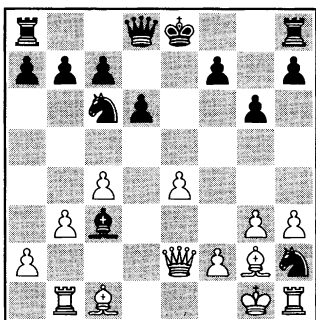
14.♞xh2 ♙xe2+ 15.♞xe2 0-0 is better for Black due to the unfortunate position of the rook on h2, and the king on f1.

**14...♙xe2**

Naturally, Ivanov is not satisfied with a mere repetition after 14...♞f3+ 15.♞f1.

**15.♞xe2**





**15...h5!**

Touching up the dark squares. White cannot block the h-pawn as the intrepid knight would escape to g4.

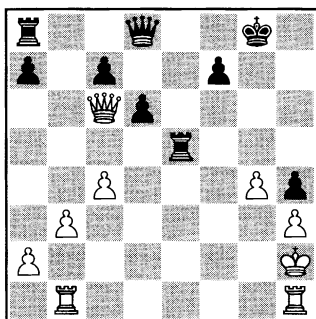
**16.♖xh2 h4 17.g4 g5!**

Preparing a dark-square blockade with ...♙e5+ and ...♜f6. Ippolito now gives up a pawn to avoid that dismal prospect.

**18.e5?! ♙xe5+ 19.f4** This was White's idea. **19...gxf4 20.♙xc6+** Better was **20.♙xf4. 20...bxc6 21.♙xf4 0-0** Ivanov has finally found the time to castle.

**22.♙xe5 ♜e8** Black remains a pawn ahead for the moment due to this pin.

**23.♜f3 ♜xe5 24.♜xc6**



White has regained the pawn, but at the cost of his coordination. Ivanov now transfers the game into a winning double rook ending.

**24...♜e2+ 25.♖g1 ♜e8!**

This is stronger than taking on a2.

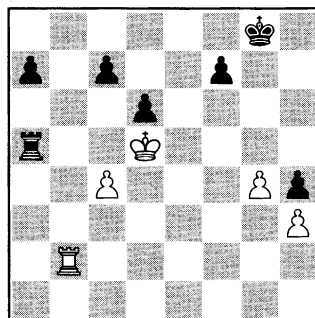
**26.♜xe8+ ♜xe8**

With his absolute control over the second (and third) rank Black should win.

**27.a4 ♜8e3 28.♜h2 ♜e1+**

Even stronger was **28...♜g3+! 29.♖h1 ♜ee3.**

**29.♜xe1 ♜xe1+ 30.♖f2 ♜b1 31.♖e3 ♜xb3+ 32.♖e4 ♜b4 33.♖d5 ♜xa4 34.♜b2 ♜a5+**



This forces the king back, or transposes into a winning pawn ending as in the game.

**35.♜b5 ♜xb5+**

**35...♜a3** also wins, but the text is simpler.

**36.cxb5 ♖g7 37.♖c6 ♖f6 38.♖xc7 d5 39.♖b7 d4 40.♖xa7 d3 41.b6 d2 42.b7 d1 ♜ 43.b8 ♜**

After the pawn race both sides have queened, but Ivanov has of course foreseen that the queens will come off again.

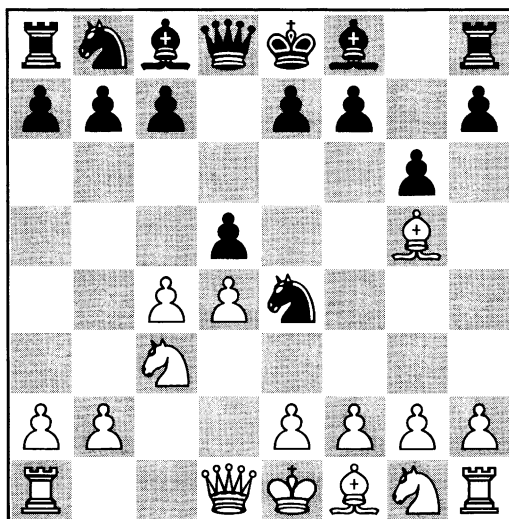
**43...♜a4+ 44.♖b7 ♜b4+ 45.♖c8 ♜xb8+ 46.♖xb8 ♖g5 47.♖c7 ♖f4 48.♖d6 ♖g3 49.♖e5 ♖xh3 50.g5 ♖g4** **0-1**



## CHAPTER 2

*Ian Rogers*

# Triple Trouble for the Grünfeld



Take my Bishop after 5.h4, 5.cxd5 or 5.♔c1

The 4.♘g5 system against the Grünfeld has a reputation as a safe, even boring, variation, especially when White replies to 4...♟e4 with 5.♘h4. The curious 5.♘f4 also became popular in the 1990s thanks to advocacy by original thinkers such as Vadim Zviagintsev and others. However both 5.♘h4 and 5.♘f4 have the less-than-original idea of preserving the g5 bishop; truly radical thinkers such as Alan Goldsmith don't worry about the bishop. 'Who is Alan Goldsmith?', I hear you cry. Goldsmith is almost unknown outside Australia yet at least one of the many opening ideas he has invented – 1.d4 ♟f6 2.♘g5 ♟e4 3.h4 – is now played around the world. When devel-

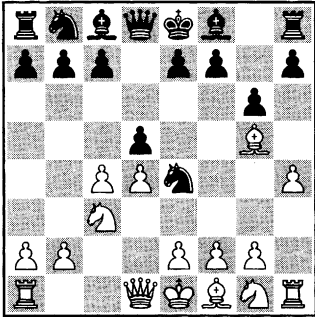
oping his 3.h4 Trompowsky system Goldsmith also analysed related ideas in the 4.♘g5 Grünfeld, both 4...♟e4 5. h4!? and 5.cxd5!? – the latter plan giving Goldsmith a number of spectacular wins. This article will examine these two plans, as well as the even more sophisticated 5.♔c1. All three moves give Black the chance to eliminate White's dark-squared bishop, but there is also the temptation to simply exchange on c3 and return to a more normal position from the 4.♘g5 lines. In these cases White has saved a tempo by not moving the g5 bishop, though the usefulness of 5.h4 and 5.♔c1 can be debated. In any case, all three systems set new and challenging problems



for Black – all that can be asked of an SOS system.

### I Grünfeld 5.h4

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 d5 4.♙g5  
♜e4 5.h4!?



### 5...♜xc3

By exchanging on c3, Black hopes to show that 5.h4 is just a waste of time.

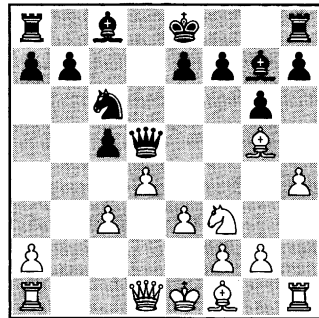
● 5...♜xc3 is very rarely seen, probably because after 6.hxg5 e6 7.♜f3 ♙g7 8.e3 b6 9.♖b3 ♙b7 10.cxd5 exd5 11.♞c1 c6 12.♙d3 the position looks more like a Queen's Gambit than a Grünfeld. Objectively Black should be fine here but the probability that both kings will stay in the centre complicates matters. The game Solis-Carrera, Peru 2002, continued 12...♙d7 13.a4!? ♖e7 (13...♜f8 14.e4!) 14.♜e2 h6 15.gxh6 ♞xh6 16.♙d2 ♞xh1 17.♞xh1 f5?! 18.♜f4 ♖f6 19.g4! 0-0-0 20.gxf5 gxf5 21.♖c2 ♙h6 and now instead of 22.♜xd5 which gave Black counterplay after 22...♖d6 23.♜e7+ ♖xe7 24.♞xh6 ♖g7 with ideas such as 25...♖g2 and 25...c5 in the air, White could have secured a safe advantage with the simple 22.♞h4.

● 5...c6 is a solid response, but soon enough Black will find himself choosing between the capture on g5 and c3, e.g. 6.♜f3 ♙g7 7.e3 ♜xc3 8.bxc3 ♜d7 9.♖b3 ♖a5 10.h5 ♜c5!?

11.♖b4 ♖xb4 12.cxb4 ♜e4, Gordon-Seidman, Pittsburgh 1946, and now the simple 13.♙f4 should keep an edge for White.

### 6.bxc3 dxc6

● Black can also try the other standard developing plan – 6...♙g7 7.e3 c5 8.♜f3 ♜c6 (8...♖a5?! 9.♖b3 cxd4 10.exd4± ♜c6? 11.cxd5 ♙xd4 12.♙d2! 1-0 was the disastrous finish to Haak-Montenegro, Vlissingen 1999) 9.cxd5 ♖xd5



and now a plan such as 10.♙e2 and 11.0-0 does not make much sense with h4 thrown in, so White should prefer 10.♖b3 ♖xb3 11.axb3 0-0 12.♙b5 with a slight endgame advantage. For those wishing to understand how to play these endgames for White, an examination of the 4.♙g5 ♜e4 5.♙h4 variation could be in order. In many of the 5.♙h4 lines Black delays playing ...♙g7 in order to have an option of ...e6 and ...♙e7 when the queens have come off the board. The penalty for not doing so has been known since Taimanov-Uhlmann, Belgrade 1970, and it still causes problems – see Korchnoi-Swinkels, Banyoles 2006.

● 6...h6 has been played quite often but certainly does not help Black, e.g. 7.♙f4 ♙g7 (7...c6 8.e3 ♖a5 9.♖b3 ♜d7 10.♜f3 ♙g7 11.cxd5 cxd5 12.♖b4 ♖xb4 13.cxb4 is a typical position where the g7 bishop does not participate in the game. After 13...♜b6



14.♔e5 0-0 15.a4 ♘d7 16.a5 ♚c4 17.♙xg7 ♙xg7 18.♙xc4 dxc4 19.♚d2 White was well on top in Muranyi-Fessler, Untergrombach 2003) 8.e3 c5 9.cxd5 ♖xd5 10.♗b3 ♗xb3 11.axb3 ♚c6, Petersen-Sirch, Leopoldsburg ch-NATO 2000, and now White should have proceeded as in the 6...♙g7 line with 12.♙b5 ♙d7 13.♚f3, when White is more comfortable.

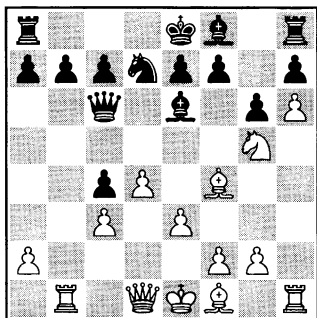
### 7.e3

Of course it is possible to regain the pawn with 7.♗a4+ c6 8.♗xc4 but after 8...♙e6 9.♗d3 ♙g7 10.h5 h6 11.♙d2 g5 12.♚f3 ♚d7 13.e4 White's big pawn centre has little support and chances were about equal in Belakovskaia-Tarasova, Gornji Milanovac 1991.

### 7...♙e6 8.h5!

Of course! Quiet development may also work, but this keeps the most pressure on Black – and shows that 5.h4 can prove useful later.

8...♙g7!? 9.h6 ♙f8 10.♖b1 ♗d5 11.♙f4 ♗c6 12.♚f3 ♚d7 13.♚g5



### 13...0-0-0?!

Having allowed the white knight to get to g5 – 12...f6 was possible – Black should take his life in his hands and play 13...♙d5! 14.f3 f5 when 15.♗e2 can be met by 15...♗f6!, with 16...e5 to follow. The position remains highly unclear but White can force Black to

repeat moves with 16.♗d2 ♗c6 and then decide how to proceed.

### 14.♚xh6 fxe6

On 14...♗xe6 15.♗a4 wins back the pawn with a continuing attack.

### 15.♖b4 ♚b6 16.♔e5 ♖g8

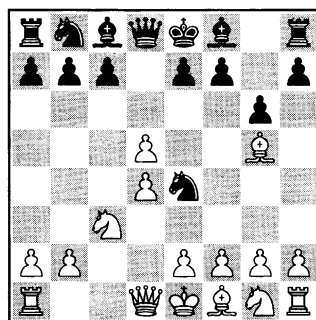
So far we have been following Doyle-Stevenson, Clarkston 1998, where White played

### 17.♗b1

and eventually won. However, a simple move like 17.♗f3 would have won the pawn back with a dominating position, while 17.♔e2!?, intending 18.♙f3, might be even stronger.

## II Grünfeld 5.cxd5

1.d4 ♚f6 2.c4 g6 3.♚c3 d5 4.♙g5 ♚e4 5.cxd5!?



To leave the bishop on g5 undefended is such an unexpected idea that even a GM who has been playing the Grünfeld all his life, Lubomir Ftacnik, admitted to having never considered the move. Of the three lines in this SOS article, this is probably also the riskiest, but bear in mind that White has a 'bale out' option on move 8.

### 5...♚xg5

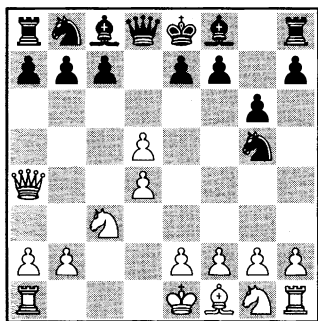
The obvious reply, but plenty of players have tried 5...♚xc3 6.bxc3 ♗xd5 despite the fact that after 7.♚f3 White is simply a tempo up on a main line, having saved the move ♙h4



or  $\text{f4}$ . Of course matters are not 100% clear since a later  $\dots\text{g4}$  by Black may force White to move the bishop away, but at least White has more options than in the main lines and can choose f4 or h4 for the bishop depending on circumstances.

#### 6.h4

For those wanting to completely confuse their opponent, 6. $\text{a4+!}$



turns out to be playable.

t – After 6...c6 7.h4  $\text{e6}$  8.dxe6  $\text{e6}$  9. $\text{f3}$   $\text{g7}$  10.e3 White stands well and in the game Meulders-Campanella, Gent 1989, White won very quickly after 10... $\text{d7?!}$  11. $\text{g5}$   $\text{f8}$  12. $\text{e2}$   $\text{d7?}$  13. $\text{b3}$  e6 14. $\text{xb7}$  c5 15. $\text{b5}$   $\text{b8}$  16. $\text{c7+}$   $\text{e7}$  17. $\text{xa7}$ .

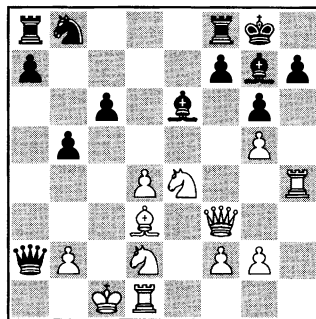
– 6... $\text{d7}$  7. $\text{b3}$   $\text{f5}$  (since this does not save the piece, Black could also consider 7...c5!? 8.dxc5  $\text{a6}$  with the idea 9.h4 – 9. $\text{c4!?}$  – 9... $\text{xc5}$  10. $\text{c4}$   $\text{b6!}$  11.hxg5  $\text{xb2}$  12. $\text{b1}$   $\text{c2!}$  when White is in trouble) 8.g4!  $\text{xg4}$  9.h4. This position is hardly clear but, having regained the piece, it certainly looks more fun to play White.

#### 6... $\text{e4}$

Black has many reasonable alternatives but they have often resulted in crushing defeats. Some examples:

● 6...e6 7.hxg5 exd5 8. $\text{b3}$  (8. $\text{f3}$  transposes to some 5.h4 lines but White's inten-

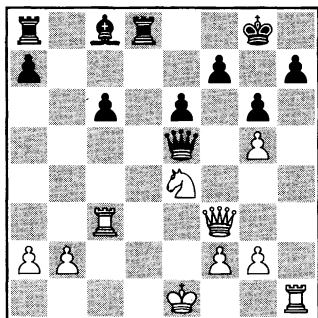
tions with 8. $\text{b3}$  are far more aggressive) 8...c6 9.e4  $\text{g7}$  10. $\text{f3}$  0-0 11. $\text{h4!?$  dxe4 12. $\text{xe4}$   $\text{a5+}$  13. $\text{fd2}$  b5? 14.0-0-0!  $\text{e6}$  15. $\text{f3}$   $\text{xa2}$  16. $\text{d3!}$



16...c5 (trying to tempt White with the rook on a8 but White's ambitions lie entirely on the other flank. However, 16... $\text{xd4}$  also loses: 17. $\text{f6+}$   $\text{xf6}$  18.gxf6  $\text{d7}$  19. $\text{hd1}$  with a winning attack) 17. $\text{hxh7!}$  (completely decisive and not difficult to calculate: 17... $\text{hxh7}$  18. $\text{f6+}$   $\text{xf6}$  19. $\text{h1+}$  wins) 17... $\text{d7}$  18. $\text{f6+}$   $\text{xf6}$  (if 18... $\text{xf6}$  then 19. $\text{hxg7+!}$  wins) 19.gxf6  $\text{fc8}$  20.d5!  $\text{xd5}$  21. $\text{hd1}$  1-0, Goldsmith-Drummond, Melbourne ch-AUS 1991.

● If the previous game was not enough of an advertisement for 5.cxd5, then Goldsmith produced a similar finish against the apparently more solid 6...c6 7.hxg5 cxd5 8. $\text{c1}$  (once again White has a less violent option in 8.e3  $\text{c6}$  9. $\text{b3}$  e6 10.f4 which led to a safe advantage for White after 10... $\text{g7}$  11. $\text{b5}$   $\text{d7}$  12. $\text{xc6}$  bxc6 13. $\text{a4}$   $\text{a5+}$  14. $\text{f2}$  0-0 15. $\text{c5}$   $\text{d2+}$  16. $\text{e2}$   $\text{ab8}$  17. $\text{d1}$   $\text{xd1}$  18. $\text{axd1}$   $\text{c8}$  19.b3 in Cherny-Simagin, Moscow 1966) 8... $\text{c6}$  9.e4 e6 (trying to stay solid, since 9...dxe4 10.d5 looks good for White) 10. $\text{f3}$  dxe4 11. $\text{xe4}$   $\text{g7}$  12. $\text{b5}$  0-0 13. $\text{xc6}$  bxc6 14. $\text{e5!}$   $\text{a5+}$  15. $\text{c3}$   $\text{xe5}$  16.dxe5  $\text{d8}$  17. $\text{f3}$   $\text{xe5}$





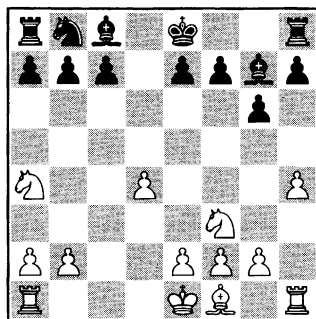
18. Bxh7!! f5! 19. Bxe3! Qa5+ 20. Qxf1 Qxh7? (it was crucial to cover the d3 square with 20... Qa6+! 21. Qg1 before taking the rook. Then after 21... Qxh7 22. Wh3+ Qg8! 23. Qf6+ Qf8 24. Wh7 White's attack is good enough for a draw but probably not more) 21. Wh3+ Qg7 (now 21... Qg8 22. Qf6+ Qf8 loses to 23. Wh8+ Qe7 24. Qg7+ Qd6 25. Bd3+ Qc5 26. Qe7+ Qc4 27. Bxd8) 22. Wh6+ Qf7 23. Wh7+ Qf8 24. Wh8+ Qf7 25. Qf6+ Qg8 26. Qxg6+ Qf8 27. Wh6+ Qe8 28. Wh8+ Qf7 29. g6+! 1-0, Goldsmith-Curtis, Sydney ch-AUS 1990.

● Ftacnik has suggested 6... Qe6!? 7. dxe6 Qxe6 with the idea that 8.e4 Qg7 leaves White's centre somewhat exposed. White should therefore prefer 8.e3 Qg7 9. Qge2! with good chances, e.g. 9... Qd7 10. Qb3 Qc8 11. h5 c5 12. d5 0-0 13. hxg6 hxg6 14. Qf4 with good attacking chances for White in Jurcik-Ates, Budva ch-EUR-U16 2003.

### 7. Qxe4 Qxd5 8. f3!?

This is Goldsmith's idea to keep the knight on e4, controlling c5, for as long as possible. It looks – and is – extremely risky to play this way without a dark-squared bishop, so most players prefer the more modest 8. Qc3. Now – Black usually plays 8... Qa5 Here the temptation for White is to take control of the centre with e3 or e4, attack with h5

and hope for the best. Unfortunately this plan very rarely succeeds – the most notable exception being Struglach-Bell, Detroit 1994 which concluded 9. Qf3 Qg7 10. h5 gxh5?! 11. e3 Qf5?? 12. Bxh5 1-0! However with the simple and thematic pawn break ...c5, Black can almost always disrupt White's attack. and launch a successful counter-attack. So perhaps the only responsible plan for White here is the modest 9. Qf3 (9.e3 will be similar) 9... Qg7 10. Qa4+ Qxa4 11. Qxa4



with an endgame which IM Voloshin has played with some success. Of course the bishop pair should be good insurance for Black but without the ...c5 break Black must certainly be careful. 11... Qg4 (11... c6 12. Bc1 0-0 13. e3 Qd7 14. Qc5 Qxc5 15. Bxc5 Qe6 16. b3 a5 17. Qc4 Qxc4 18. Bxc4 Bfd8 19. Qe2 e6 20. g4 was already very good for White in Voloshin-Spesny, Czech Republic 1999) 12. e3 Qd7 13. Bc1 c6 14. Qc5 Qxc5 (14... Bb8 15. Qe2 Qxf3 16. gxf3 e5 17. dxe5 Qxe5 18. Qd3 Qf6 19. f4 h5 20. b3 should not have been much for White, yet White again won comfortably in Voloshin-Wendt, Pardubice 1996) 15. Bxc5 Qxf3 16. gxf3 h5 17. f4 e6 18. Qg2 Qd7 19. Qe2 Bxc8 20. Qf3 Bc7 21. Qg3 Bxc8 22. Bd1 Qe7 23. b4 a6 24. a4 Qf8 25. Bb1 Qd7 26. Ba5 Bb8 27. b5 and Black had to work very hard to draw in Voloshin-Smejkal, Mlada Boleslav 1994. However if boring endgames with a minimal



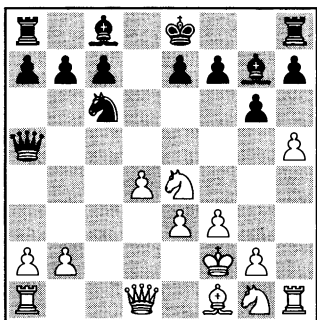
edge are not to your liking – and they probably are not if you are thinking of playing 5.cxd5!? instead of the staid 5.♖h4 – then Goldsmith's risky plan may be necessary.

– 8...♞d8 is not so bad, e.g. 9.e3 ♖g7 10.h5 (10.♖b5+!? ♜d7 11.h5 worked out well for White in Bönsch-Pribyl, Berlin 1989) 10...c5 11.h6 ♖f6 12.♜e4 ♞a5+ 13.♞d2 ♞xd2+ 14.♝xd2 cxd4 15.♜xf6+ exf6 16.exd4 0-0 17.♖c4 ♖e6 when any White advantage is miniscule – in fact a draw was agreed here in Forintos-Navarovszky, Budapest 1965.

### 8...♖g7

8...♜c6 9.e3 ♖f5 was tried in Harrison-Lutley, Adelaide 2004, and now 10.♜e2! (instead of 10.♜d3?! ♖h6!) would have enabled White to maintain the knight on e4.

**9.e3 ♞a5+ 10.♝f2 ♜c6 11.h5?!**



### 11...♖f5?!

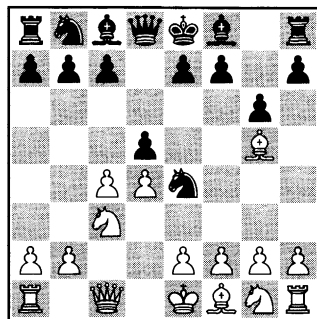
Both players missed that White's last move allowed the powerful (if anti-positional) tactical response 11...f5! followed by 12...f4. Of course White should have played 11.♜e2, keeping the f4 square under control. **12.h6 ♖f6 13.♜xf6+ exf6 14.♞c1?**

Far too enthusiastic. After 14.♜e2 White can claim a slight edge whereas now after **14...♞xa2 15.♖c4 ♞xb2+ 16.♜e2 ♞b4**

White had insufficient compensation for the two pawns and eventually lost in Goldsmith-Kagan, Melbourne 1993.

## III Grünfeld 5.♞c1

**1.d4 ♜f6 2.c4 g6 3.♜c3 d5 4.♖g5 ♜e4 5.♞c1?!**

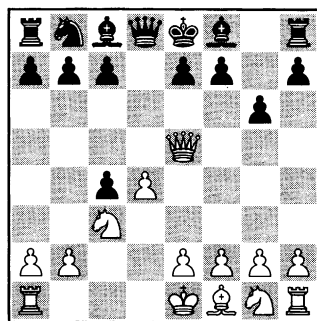


Of the three SOS lines in this article, 5.♞c1 looks the most artificial yet it turns out to be surprisingly dangerous for Black. It also has a number of strong advocates, most notably the Czech GM Marek Vokac.

### 5...♖g7

The most sensible reply.

● However, many players are tempted by 5...♜xg5, only to find that after 6.♞xg5 Black is struggling for a good move. To save the d-pawn Black must play 6...dxc4 (on 6...♖g7 7.♞xd5! is strong) but then White inserts the annoying 7.♞e5!

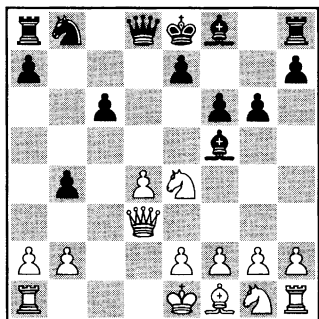


and Black must make a concession:

– 7...f6 8.♞b5+ c6 9.♞xc4 and White



stands well, e.g. 9...b5!? (9...e6 10.h4!? worked out well for White in Meszaros-Soukal, CZE 1996 but of course quiet development also leaves Black's position rather disjointed) 10.♖d3 b4 11.♟e4 ♟f5-



and now instead of 12.g4!? which gave Black counterplay after 12...♟xc4 13.♟xf6+ exf6 14.♞e4+ ♟f7 15.♞xc4 b3! in Meszaros-Tomescu, Ceske Budejovice 1997, White should be quite content with 12.e3 ♞d5 13.f3, intending ♟e2-g3.

– Instead of 7...f6, 7...♞g8 is not often seen, perhaps because White has the immediate 8.♟d5 which, fortunately for Black, does not win immediately. In practice, White has always chosen something quieter, such as 8.e3 ♞d6 (8...♟g7 9.♞b5+ c6 10.♞xc4 ♟e6 11.♞b4!? was Landau-Schwarz, Troisdorf 2003, and now 11...♞b6 looks fine for Black) 9.♞xd6 cxd6 10.♟d5 ♟a6 11.♟xc4 ♟e6, Meszaros-Smistik, Brno 2005, which might give White a very small edge after 12.♟b3) 8...♟g7 9.♞xc7 ♟c6 10.♞xd8+ ♟xd8 11.e3 b5. This looks rather suspicious for Black but White does not seem well enough developed to exploit the strange positioning of Black's pieces, e.g. 12.a4?! ♟b7! 13.axb5? ♟xd4!.

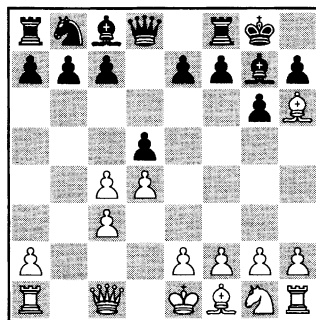
● Note that Black cannot try to avoid ♟h6 and try to return to a main line with 5...h6 6.♟f4 ♟xc3 7.bxc3 dxc4 because after 8.e4

b5 9.a4 c6 10.♟f3 ♟g7 11.♟e2 ♟d7 12.0-0 ♟f6 13.♟e5 and White has great compensation for the pawn and went on to win in Vokac-Walek, Czech Republic 2005.

● 5...c5 fails tactically to 6.cxd5! ♟xc5 (6...♟xc3 7.♞xc3!) 7.♞xc5 cxd4 8.♞e5 ♞b6!? 9.♞d1! ♞xb2 10.♞xd4 with a large advantage for White.

● 5...♟xc3 6.bxc3 (6.♞xc3 makes life too easy for Black after 6...♟g7 7.e3 c5 8.♟f3 ♟c6 9.♞d1 ♟g4 when no Grünfeld player could complain about Black's central pressure, even if chances are no more than equal) – 6...dxc4 wins a pawn but once again Vokac has shown that White's compensation is considerable, e.g. 7.e4 h6 8.♟e3 b5 9.a4 c6 10.♟f3 ♟g7 11.♟e2 ♟d7 12.0-0 a6 13.♞d1 ♟f6 14.♟e5 ♟xe4 15.♟xc6 ♞d5 16.axb5 ♟b7 17.♞a3 ♟xc6 18.bxc6 ♞xc6 19.♟f3 and White won in Vokac-David, Czech tt 2004/05.

– 6...♟g7 walks into one of the main ideas behind 5.♞c1: 7.♟h6 0-0



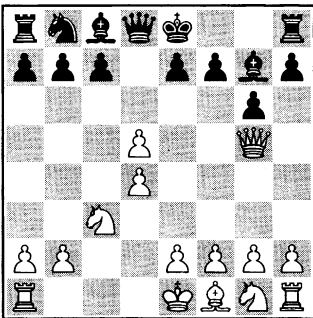
8.h4! and, although Black can stop the mating attack by playing ...♟f5 and recapturing on g6 with the bishop, White has all the chances.

– 6...c5 7.♟f3 ♟g7 8.♟h6 0-0 9.h4 f6 10.♟xc7 ♟xc7 Eniashin-Dvoretzka, Kharkov 2004, and now the simple 11.e3 leaves White comfortably placed.



**6.cxd5 ♖xg5**

6...♖xc3 7.bxc3 ♖xd5 is another attempt to try to return to main lines but once again White can try 8.♗h6 (8.♖f3 ♗g4!? 9.♗h6 ♗xh6! 10.♖xh6 ♖c6 11.♖f4 ♗xf3 12.gxf3 ♖a5 13.♖d2 0-0-0 14.e3 e5 15.♖d1 was unclear in Kümin-Salokangas, Tampere 2003) 8...0-0 9.♗xg7 (the aggressive 9.♖f3 c5 10.h4!? cxd4 11.h5 worked out well for White after 11...gxh5?! 12.cxd4 ♖c6 13.♗xg7 ♗xg7 14.e3 in Vokac-Votava, Czech tt 2002/03, but 11...g5! 12.cxd4 f6 would have been more testing for White) 9...♗xg7 10.♖f3 c5 11.e3 b6 12.♗e2 cxd4 13.cxd4 ♗a6 14.♗xa6 ♖a5+! 15.♖d2 ♖xa6 16.♖e5 ♖c8 17.d5 ♖c5 18.♖d3! ♖c4 19.0-0 ♖d7 and now instead of 20.♖b4?! ♖a5 21.♖b2+ ♖f6 22.a3?! which led to trouble after 22...♖b5! 23.♖a1 ♖xc1 24.♖xc1 ♖xd5 in Vokac-Navara, Ostrava 2002, White should have contented himself with 20.♖fd1, with a very slight advantage. 7.♖xg5

**7...♖xd5**

A typical Grünfeld-style gambit with 7...0-0 8.♖f3 c6 does not work out well here because after 9.dxc6 ♖xc6 10.e3 the pawn break 10...e5 allows White to exchange

queens, i.e. 11.♖xd8 ♖xd8 12.dxe5 ♖xe5 13.♖d4 ♖c6 14.♖xc6 bxc6 15.♖c1 ♗e6 16.b3, Kümin-Deschenaux, Biel 2003, when Black's drawing chances are slim because an attempt to liquidate the queenside pawns with 16...♗xc3+ 17.♖xc3 a5 fails to 18.♗c4! (and not 18.♖xc6? a4 leading to a drawn 4v3 endgame).

**8.♖f3 ♗g7 9.e4 0-0 10.♗c4 a6**

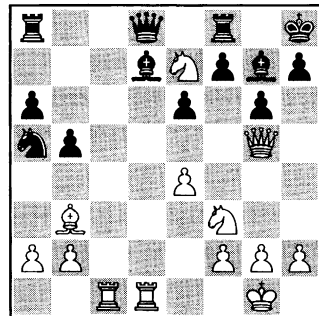
10...c6 may be Black's best try, because the endgame after 11.0-0 cxd5 12.♖xd5 (12.exd5!?) 12...♖c6 13.♖fd1 e6! 14.♖xd8 ♖xd8 15.♖e7+ ♗f8 16.♖xc6 ♖xd1+ 17.♖xd1 bxc6 Adler-Papa, Switzerland 2003, should be tenable for Black.

**11.0-0 b5 12.♗b3 c5 13.dxc6 ♖xc6 14.♖fd1 ♗d7**

So far we have been following Vokac-Sasikiran, Pardubice 2002, where White tried 15.♖d5 but could do no more than draw after 15...♖a7. However, if White had played the simple

**15.♖ac1**

then Black's task remains very difficult, e.g.

**15...♖a5?! 16.♖d5 e6 17.♖e7+ ♗h8****18.♗xe6!! fxe6 19.♖e5!**

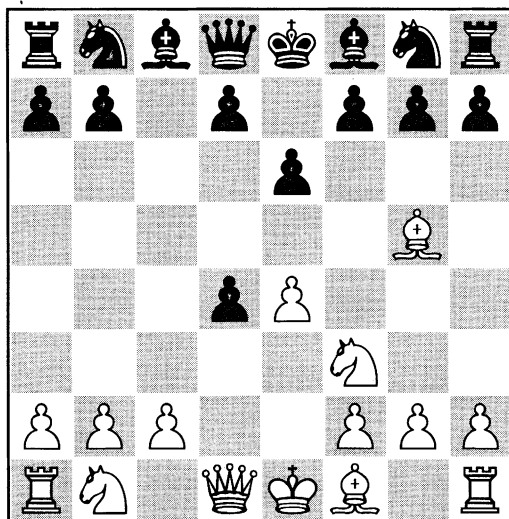
with a winning attack for White.



# CHAPTER 3

## *Jeroen Bosch*

### Sicilian: the Aussie Attack



1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗g5

In chess we are not obliged to capture, as for example in the game of checkers, and in the diagrammed position White takes advantage of this by means of 4.♗g5!?. Clearly, this SOS earns full points for shock effect, but the fact that it is legal (and surprising) says nothing about its objective merits. After all, scores and scores of games are played with the mundane 4.♗xd4. Can millions of chess players be wrong? would be a natural question. Well, they are not of course. The proper open Sicilian response is correct but it also stands for loads and loads of theory. The good thing about our present subject is that it gives the game a surprising twist from the start, while it isn't all that bad. In all objec-

tivity, it shouldn't promise you an opening advantage against best play. However, how many of your opponents will be prepared for 4.♗g5?

The whole concept has been invented by a bunch of Australian players which is why the Aussie Attack is a proper epithet. I have taken the name from an article by Gary Lane in the magazine Chess Horizons. Lane mentions the Australians Nick Speck and Mark Chapman as the originators. While Alan Goldsmith and Chris Depasquale also seem involved somehow. Indeed, regular SOS-contributor Ian Rogers confirms that there exists something like an 'Adelaide Opening Mafia'. To top it off, Aleksandar



Wohl played it in the 2002 Bled Olympiad against GM Kveinis, and (with more success) in the game presented below. We will investigate all the byways in Wohl-Wanderer, while the GM duel Ivanisevic-Fedorchuk features the main response 4...♟f6 when we arrive at a position most commonly reached via the Torre Attack or the Trompowsky (but more about that later)!

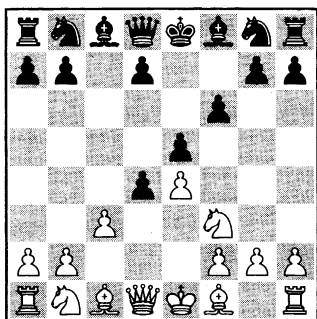
□ Aleksandar Wohl  
 ■ Thomas Wanderer  
 Graz 2005

**1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♙g5 ♙e7**

Let's investigate the other 4th move alternatives apart from 4...♟f6:

● 4...f6. This parries the attack on the queen at the cost of taking away the f6 square from the knight. As 5...e5 to hang on to the d-pawn will be too dangerous anyway, this is not such a good idea.

– Lane now mentions 5.♙c1!? as a suggestion of Nick Speck's. He continues with 5...e5 6.c3!

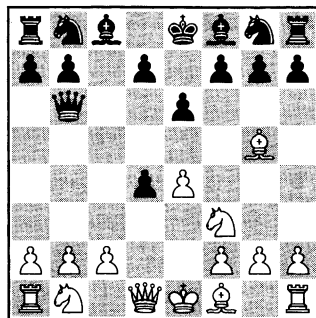


6...d5 (best, considering the circumstances. The problem for Black is that 6...dxc3 7.♟xc3 leads to a superior Smith-Morra Gambit. With the pawn on f6 the diagonal

a2-g8 is – fatally – weakened) 7.exd5 ♟xd5 8.cxd4 ♟c6 (8...e4!?) 9.♟c3 ♙b4 10.♙d2 ♙xc3 11.♙xc3 and this is similar to a 2.c3 Sicilian with the f-pawn on f6 rather than on f7. Lane is clearly right in preferring White.

– 5.♙h4 d5 (5...e5?! is of course again met by the Smith-Morra response 6.c3 dxc3 7.♟xc3 – Lane) 6.exd5 ♟xd5 7.♟xd4 (this is the safe move – White can also play for compensation with 7.♟bd2) 7...♟xd4 8.♟xd4 a6 9.♙c4 e5 10.♟e6 ♙xe6 11.♙xe6 ♟c6 12.c3 and White had an endgame plus in Herrmann-Berger, Greifswald 2003.

● 4...♟b6.



This should not be met by 5.♟xd4 ♙c5 6.c3 ♟c6 7.♟d2 d5 (7...♟xd4 8.cxd4 ♙xd4 9.♟c4 ♙xf2+ 10.♙e2 ♟b5 11.♟xf2 ♟xg5 and White does not have enough for two pawns) 8.exd5 exd5 9.♙b5?! (9.♟2b3) 9...♙xd4 10.♟e2+ ♙e6 11.cxd4 h6 12.♙f4 ♟e7 13.♙d1 0-0 and Black was fine in Goldsmith-Zaric, Adelaide Interclub A 2005.

White has two very decent alternatives in my opinion:

– 5.♟xd4 ♟xd4 6.♟xd4 a6 7.♟d2 is a safe plus according to Lane.

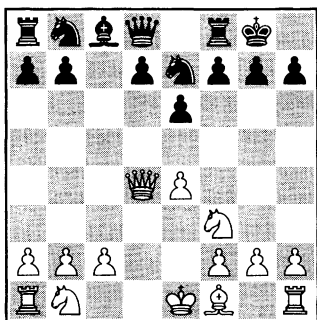
– I think 5.♟bd2 deserves serious consideration (especially if you were frivolous enough to play 4.♙g5 anyway). White has a big lead in development after 5...♟xb2 6.♙d3.



● Both 4...♖a5+ and 4...♙b4+ are best met by the Smith-Morra with 5.c3.

● 4...♖c7 can be met by 5.c3 (5.♟xd4 with an Open Sicilian is playable – not fearing 5...♖e5 as 6.♙e3 is possible. Bad now is 6...♖xe4 7.♟c3 with an edge in development that more than compensates the pawn. For example 7...♙b4?! 8.♟b5) 5...dxc3 (Miezis preferred 5...♟f6 and after 6.♙d3 ♟c6 7.cxd4 h6 8.♙xf6 gxf6 9.0-0 a6 10.♟c3 White was better in this double-edged position, T.Hansen-Miezis, Sandefjord 2003) 6.♟xc3 ♟c6 is a regular Smith-Morra Gambit where White has placed his bishop on g5. Food for thought.

● Finally, in reply to 4...♟e7 White has both 5.♟xd4 and 5.♖xd4 ♟bc6 6.♖d2. 7.♙xe7 ♟xe7 6.♖xd4 0-0



### 7.♙d3

Here 7.♖d6!? deserves serious consideration. The idea is to block the d-pawn. White controls the dark squares, and Black will have difficulty developing. Wohl's plan is more double-edged. He castles queenside and plays for a kingside attack.

7...♟bc6 8.♖d2 a6

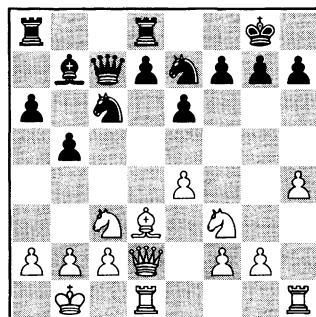
This is a very Sicilian move, but Black should perhaps have preferred to get 8...d5 in. White has nothing special after 9.exd5 ♟xd5 10.♟xd5 exd5. While in case of 9.0-0-0 Black has 9...♖b6 to prevent White

from taking the pawn. 10.exd5 ♟xd5 11.♟xd5 exd5 12.♖xd5 ♙e6 13.♖b5 ♖xf2 or the immediate 12...♖xf2.

9.0-0-0 b5 10.♟b1 ♖c7

Worthy alternatives are 10...b4 and 10...♖a5.

11.h4 ♙d8 12.♙d3 ♙b7



### 13.♖g5

Wohl is attacking with pieces rather than with pawns. Positions with opposite castling are always tense of course. At this stage it is hard to believe that Black is worse.

13...h6 14.♖g4 ♙ac8

Again this is a natural Sicilian move, but perhaps it is a little slow. The immediate 14...b4 came in consideration. Wohl directs another heavy piece to the kingside in a blunt but efficient manner.

15.♙h3 ♟e5?

This mistake hands White a serious edge. Stronger was 15...♟g6 16.♙g3 (16.h5 ♟ge5 is better for Black) 16...♟ce5 (also good is 16...♖f4!?) 17.♟xe5 ♖xe5.

16.♟xe5 ♖xe5 17.f4 f5

A creative response.

18.♖f3

Black defends after 18.exf5 exf5 19.fxe5 (19.♖g3 ♖f6 and White's pieces do not coordinate) 19...fxg4 20.♙g3 h5.

18...♖c5 19.g4 ♖b4?

Going for a one-move threat. Correct was



19...b4, when all results are still possible.

### 20.a3

Also possible is 20.gxf5 due to 20...♞xc3 21.f6! gxf6 (21...♟f5 22.♞g4) 22.♞h5 and White just wins.

### 20...♞c5?!

Preferable was 20...fxe4.

### 21.gxf5 ♟xf5

White has a great position after 21...exf5 22.♞g3.

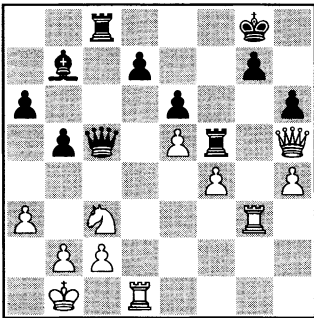
### 22.♞h5

Or 22.♞g4.

### 22...♟e7 23.e5 ♞f8?!

23...♞f2 preventing 24.♞g3 does not save Black, as White has 24.♟e2 when 25.♞g3 is again on the cards.

### 24.♞g3 ♟f5 25.♟xf5 ♞xf5



White plays and wins:

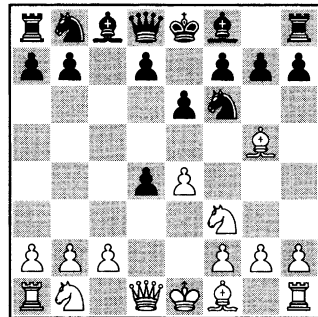
26.♞xg7+! ♟xg7 27.♞xd7+ ♟f8  
28.♞xh6+ 1-0

□ Ivan Ivanisevic  
■ Sergey Fedorchuk  
Bar 2005

### 1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 e6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♟g5 ♟f6

The actual move order of this game was 1.d4 ♟f6 2.♟g5 e6 3.♟f3 c5 4.e4 cxd4. Yet another common move order is 1.d4 ♟f6 2.♟f3 e6 3.♟g5 c5 4.e4 (4.e3) 4...cxd4, the so

called Wagner Gambit. While most interestingly it is via the Trompowsky that two SOS lines meet. Our SOS response (with black) after 1.d4 ♟f6 2.♟g5 is 2...e6 3.e4 c5 but now 4.♟f3 cxd4 (rather than the much more common 4.e5 h6 5.♟c1 see Bellon Lopez-Bosch in the SOS Files of this issue) transposes to the present SOS (with white). This is a common problem for repertoire books, but not one I had encountered before in the SOS series. I am not going to cheat you into believing that one line can be both good for Black (at least equal) and good for White (a plus). In my opinion Black is objectively OK in the diagrammed position, But I do believe that it is possible to obtain interesting and playable positions after 4...♟f6 that will set your opponents plenty of practical problems to solve over the board.



### 5.e5

In several games White has preferred 5.♟bd2 over this natural move. The idea is to play the somewhat unclear position after 5...♟c6 6.e5 h6 7.♟h4 g5 8.♟g3 ♟h5 9.♟b5. See the comments below (7.♟g3 instead of 7.exf6 in the text). However, in my opinion Black has an excellent Open Sicilian following 5...d6!, when White has developed his knight to the passive d2-square.

### 5...h6

Another Ozzie, IM David Smerdon, has

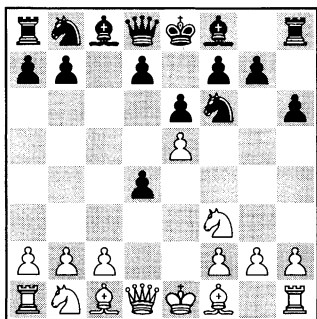


opined that Black is better after 5...♖a5+ 6.♗d2 ♖b6! (Ian Rogers – personal communication). This is certainly true, but White should settle for 6.♖d2, when 6...♖xd2+ 7.♗bxd2 ♗d5 8.♗xd4 is a somewhat better ending for White. This is similar to 5...h6 6.♗h4 ♖a5+ 7.♖d2 below.

### 6.♗h4

It is most natural to keep the pin, although you must have made up your mind how to respond to 6...g5. There are two other bishop moves:

- All the way back with 6.♗c1!?



now in line with our Trompowsky SOS Black has two replies:

– The natural 6...♗d5 sort of equalizes after 7.♖xd4 ♗c6 8.♖e4 d6. This position is rather similar to 1.e4 c5 2.c3 ♗f6 3.e5 ♗d5 4.d4 cxd4 5.♖xd4 e6 6.♗f3 ♗c6 7.♖e4 d6. Here, White has no pawn on c3, and Black's h-pawn has moved to h6. All this means that Black has no problems.

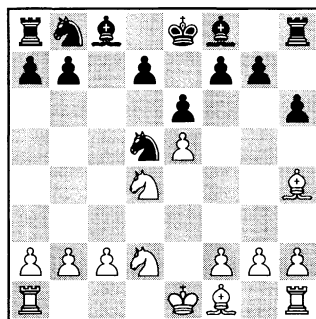
– I quite like 6...♗h7!? 7.♖xd4 ♗c6 8.♖e4 ♗g5!? (8...d5 9.exd6 ♗xd6 10.♗d3 ♗f6 11.♖e2 0-0 12.0-0 ♗b4 was also easy for Black in Teske-Bologan, Frankfurt rapid 2000) 9.♗xg5 hxg5 10.♗bd2. White has a slight lead in development, and the g5-pawn looks a little odd, but Black has a potential monster in the form of the dark-squared bishop. The position is perhaps still unclear, but Black won in Okhotnik-Tregubov,

Köbanya 1992, and in Marzano-Mantovani, Bratto 2003.

● 6.♗d2 looks odd, but it was Wohl's choice against Kveinis at the Bled Olympiad. The game went 6...♗e4 (6...♖b6!?) 7.♖e2!? (7.♗d3 ♗xd2 8.♗bxd2 ♗c6) 7...♗xd2 8.♗bxd2 ♗c6 9.0-0-0 d6 and Black had nothing to worry about in Wohl-Kveinis, Bled 2002.

### 6...g5

This is the sharpest option. Quite popular in practice is 6...♖a5+. However, the ending after 7.♖d2 ♖xd2+ 8.♗bxd2 ♗d5 9.♗xd4



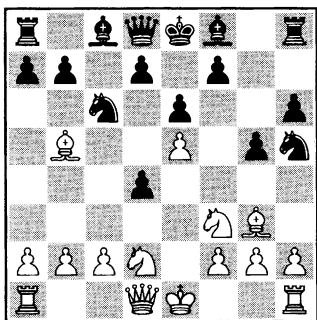
is more pleasant for White: 9...♗c6 (9...a6 10.♗g3 ♗c5 11.♗4b3 ♗e7 12.♗e2 ♗c6 13.c4 ♗c7 14.♗e4 0-0 15.0-0 with a positional plus for the machine in Chessica-Ligterink, The Hague 1997; 9...d6 10.exd6 ♗xd6 11.0-0-0 ♗d7 is perhaps Black's best way of playing – White is only slightly better, Hernando-Hernandez, Sitges 2006; 9...♗e7 10.♗xe7 ♗xe7 11.a3 f6? 12.c4 fxe5 13.♗4f3 ♗f4 14.g3 ♗g6 15.♗d3! ♗f8 16.♗xe5 was excellent for White in Stefanova-Rodriguez Lopez, Las Palmas 1996) 10.♗xc6 bxc6 (10...dxc6 11.0-0-0 g5 12.♗g3 ♗g7 13.c4 ♗f4 14.♗xf4 gxf4 15.♗f3 ♗d7±, Marzano-Scagliarini, Italy 1998) 11.0-0-0 g5 (11...♖b8 12.c4 ♗f4 13.♗g3 g5 14.h4 ♗g7 15.♗f3 ♗h5 16.♗h2 g4 17.♗e2! gxf3 18.♗xf3 ♖b4 19.b3 ♗f6 20.exf6 ♗xf6 21.♗d6±, Depasquale-



Jovanovic, Adelaide 2004) 12. ♖g3 h5 13. h4 g4 14. c4 ♗e7 15. ♗e4 ♗f5 16. ♙f4 ♙e7 17. ♙g5 ♙a6 18. ♙f6 ♖h6 19. ♙xe7 ♗xe7 20. g3 ♖d8 21. c5 with a huge plus in Wagner-Becker, Hamburg 1924(!).

### 7.exf6

7. ♙g3 ♗h5 (7... ♗e4) 8. ♗bd2 (of mainly historical interest is 8. ♗xd4 ♗c6 9. ♗e4 ♙g7 10. ♙b5 ♗c7 11. ♙xc6 ♗xc6 12. ♗e2 ♗c5 13. 0-0 ♗xg3 14. hxg3 g4 15. ♗fd2 ♗xe5 16. ♗xg4 ♗xb2 and Black was winning in Marshall-Nimzowitsch, Berlin 1928) 8... ♗c6 9. ♙b5. The move order via 5. ♗bd2 has been mentioned above.



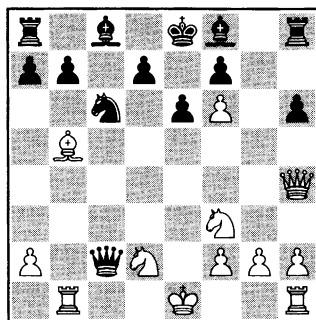
Now 9... ♗xg3 10. hxg3 g4 11. ♙xc6! dxc6 12. ♗h2! has occurred in practice (first in Mohrlok-Zuidema, Vrnjacka Banja 1967). White wins back the pawn and is somewhat better despite his opponent's bishop pair. The weaknesses in Black's camp are more important here.

The problem, however, is 9... g4! and White has no good way to continue the game: 10. ♙h4?! (10. ♙xc6 dxc6 11. ♗h4 ♗xg3 12. hxg3 ♗d5 and here we see why Black should play 9... g4 rather than 9... ♗xg3. The knight does nothing on h4, whereas on h2 it is excellently placed attacking g4) 10... ♗b6 (or 10... ♗c7, Bousios-Lyrintzakis, Athens 1987) 11. ♙xc6 ♗xc6 12. ♗xd4 ♗xg2 13. ♖f1 ♗xh2 14. ♗xg4 ♗xe5+ 15. ♗d1 ♗f6 16. ♗f3 ♙e7 and Black eventually won in

Malich-Adamski, Leipzig 1977.

### 7...gxh4 8. ♗xd4 h3!?

More natural is the pawn sac 8... ♗c6 9. ♗xh4, with the point that 9... ♗b6 forces White in turn to sacrifice b2, as 10. b3 is insipid. 10. ♗bd2 ♗xb2 11. ♖b1 ♗xc2 12. ♙b5



This position was tested twice in China:

- 12... ♙a6 13. ♙xc6 ♗xc6 14. 0-0 b5 15. ♗e5 ♗d5 16. ♗h5 ♖h7 and Black had everything defended for the moment in Liu Pei-Qi Jingxuan, Suzhou 2006. White should now perhaps have played 17. ♖fd1 (rather than 17. ♗df3) and if you love to attack then here's your chance. White may well be better!

- 12... ♖g8 13. h3! (to avoid 13. 0-0 ♗g6 followed by ... ♗g4) 13... ♙a6 (13... ♖xg2) 14. ♙xc6 ♗xc6 15. 0-0 b6 (15... b5) 16. ♖fc1 ♙c5 17. ♗xh6 ♙b7 18. ♗h7 0-0-0 19. ♗xf7 and now White was a pawn up, but the little guys hardly count in this position. White transferred the game into a winning ending after 19... ♖df8 20. ♗h7 ♖h8 21. ♗d3 e5? 22. ♗c4! e4 23. ♗xb6+! ♗d8 24. ♗xd7+!, Zhang Ziyang-Wu Shaobin, Wuxi 2005.

### 9.g3 ♗c6 10. ♗h4 ♗b6

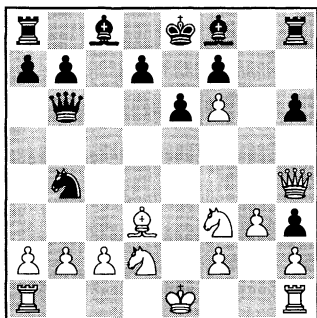
Similar play as after 8... ♗c6 9. ♗xh4.

### 11. ♗bd2! ♗b4

Or 11... ♗xb2 12. ♖b1 ♗xc2 13. ♙b5. The interpolation of 8... h3 9. g3 probably favours White. A future ... ♖g8 will not attack g2.

### 12. ♙d3





### 12...xd3+?!

Possibly 12...xc2+ 13.xc2 ♖xb2 14.0-0 ♖xc2. But White has the same big lead in development as in all these lines. You should see for yourself whether you enjoy playing such positions.

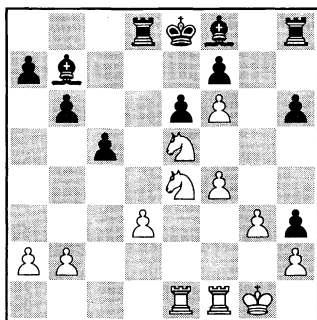
### 13.cxd3 ♖b5 14.0-0 b6

Black has not been materialistic and counts on his pair of bishops. White now, somewhat unexpectedly, transfers the game into a favourable ending.

### 15.♖e4 ♖c6

15...d5 16.♖f4 is better for White too. For 16...♖xd3?? loses to 17.♖c7.

### 16.♖xc6!? dxc6 17.♗e4 ♗b7 18.♗e5 ♗d8 19.f4 c5 20.♞ae1



White is better due to his central knights (and rooks). Black has difficulties untangling his kingside.

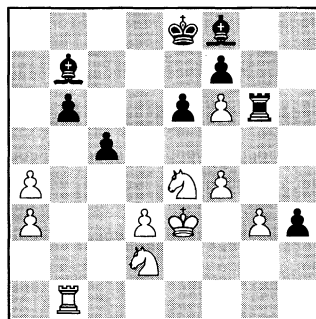
### 20...♞d4 21.b3 a5?! 22.♖f2

22.f5!?

### 22...h5 23.♖e3 ♞h6 24.♗c4 a4 25.♗cd2!?

White is slightly better after 25.♗xb6 ♗xe4 26.dxe4 axb3 27.axb3 ♞b4 28.♗c4 ♞xb3+ 29.♖e2 ♞xf6 30.♞a1.

### 25...♞g6 26.bxa4! h4 27.♞b1 hxg3 28.hxg3 ♞b4 29.a3! ♞xb1 30.♞xb1



### 30...e5?

30...♞h6 31.♗f3.

### 31.f5!

Avoiding 31.fxe5 ♗h6+! 32.♖e2 ♗xd2 33.♗d6+ ♗d7 34.♗xb7 ♗c3 and Black has enough counterplay.

### 31...♞g8

31...♞h6 and the rook is behind the passed pawn, but Black again loses out on the ...♗h6 idea. 32.♞h1 followed by 33.♗c4 or 33.♗f3 is better for White.

### 32.♖f3

32.♖f2! avoids the pin along the diagonal.

### 32...♗d5 33.a5 ♗h6?

This is a blunder. 33...bxa5 34.♞h1 (not 34.♞b8+ ♗d7 35.♗c4 ♞h8) 34...♞h8 35.♗c4 and White is superior.

### 34.♗c4

34.axb6 ♗xd2 35.b7 was possible too.

### 34...h2 35.♞h1 b5 36.♗d6+

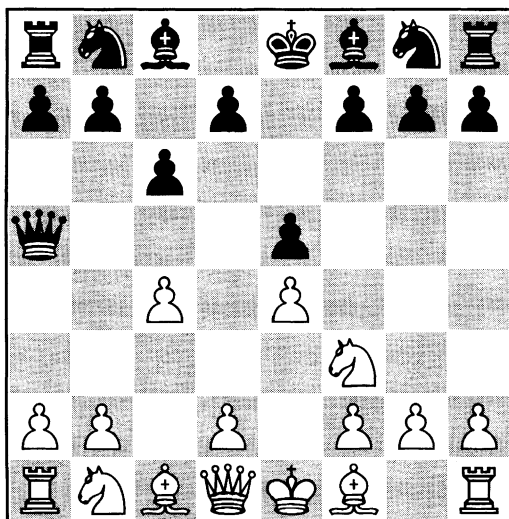
And Black resigned. After 37.♞xh2 his position holds no prospects.



## CHAPTER 4

*Erwin l'Ami*

# No Panov – Play an Early Queen Move



1.c4 c6 2.e4 e5 3.♞f3 ♚a5

Suppose you are an 1.e4-player who, against the Caro-Kann Defence, loves to employ the Panov Attack (1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.exd5 cxd5 4.c4). You have studied the Panov carefully by playing through the games of the experts, and by analysing the typical isolated-pawn type of positions.

Then you are going to a tournament and you're facing a guy who – as you can see in your database – plays only Sicilians as Black. Pity, no Panov today you think, but not so fast! What is he playing after 1.d4? He is going 1...d5. After 1.c4? He goes 1...c6 to reply 2.d4 with 2...d5 transposing into his 1.d4-repertoire. You're still there?

We just caught our opponent! By playing

1.c4 c6 2.e4! he faces a difficult choice. 2...d5 is the obvious move, but after 3.exd5 cxd5 4.d4 we transpose to the Panov Attack, and wasn't our opponent only playing Sicilians? This move-order trick is often used in tournament practice. Now we are going to place ourselves in the shoes of our opponent. He is sitting behind the board and after 1.c4 c6 2.e4 he realizes he is being lured into a Caro-Kann.

Not knowing anything about the Panov, our opponent searches for an alternative. Unfortunately, this game happened to be played just a week after this book was published and our opponent was therefore ready to surprise us with 2...e5!?



This is the line I would like to examine in this survey. First of all I should note that the position after 2...e5 can be reached through various move-orders. The most common is 1.e4 c6 2.c4 but the above-mentioned 1.c4 c6 2.e4 is of course just as viable. White's best way to fight for an advantage is to immediately question the black centre with 3.♘f3. Before we will go deeper into this and into the SOS-reply 3...♙a5, let's check two other replies first.

- I 3.d4  
II 3.♘c3  
III 3.♘f3

### Variation I

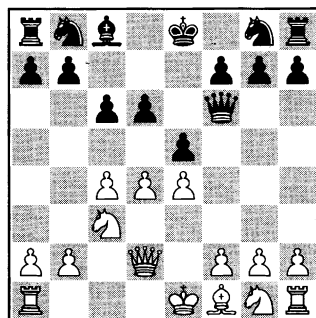
#### 3.d4

This is less harmless than it looks. Logical would seem

**3...♙b4+ 4.♙d2 ♙xd2+ 5.♙xd2 d6** when Black got rid of his bad bishop and has a decent structure. This assessment is a bit too easy though. White also has his trumps with more space and a big centre. Indeed, although English grandmaster Tony Miles – a great expert of 2...e5 – used to play this line with great success I would not recommend it. One of his games went 6.♘c3 ♙f6 7.♘ge2 ♘e7 8.0-0-0 0-0 9.f4 ♙g4 10.f5 ♘d7 11.h3 ♙xe2 12.♙xe2, Sax-Miles, Lugano 1989, when White was ready to push his g-pawn forward with a nice advantage. I'll show you this game now, before continuing our discussion of 3.d4.

□ Gyula Sax  
■ Tony Miles  
Lugano 1989

**1.e4 c6 2.c4 e5 3.d4 ♙b4+ 4.♙d2 ♙xd2+ 5.♙xd2 d6 6.♘c3 ♙f6!?**



An interesting decision, Black threatens to take on d4 while after 7.0-0-0 the queen exchange 7...♙h6! equalizes.

**7.♘ge2 ♘e7 8.0-0-0 0-0 9.f4!**

Firmly seizing the initiative!

**9...♙g4 10.f5**

Preparing to push the g- and h-pawns. Black is obliged to find quick counterplay.

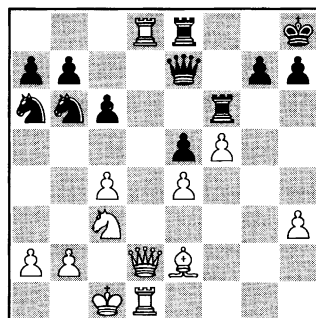
**10...♘c8 11.dxe5 dxe5 12.h3 ♙xe2 13.♙xe2**

Black is clearly in trouble.

**13...♘a6 14.g4 ♙e7 15.g5 f6 16.♖hg1 ♘b6 17.gxf6 ♖xf6 18.♖g3 ♘h8 19.♖d3**

The rook is heading in the wrong direction! Better is to continue the attack on the kingside: 19.h4 ♖ff8 (preparing to exchange rooks) 20.♙g5!? ♖ae8 21.♖dgl and Black is under pressure.

**19...♖e8 20.♖d8 ♖ff8 21.♖d6 ♖f6 22.♖d8**





Realizing that Black has equalized White decides to repeat moves...

**22...♠ef8**

...but Miles has other ideas!

**23.♙xf8+ ♗xf8 24.♚d6 ♜xd6 25.♙xd6 ♜g8 26.♜e6?! ♚d7 27.♜e7 ♜d8**

The rook on e7 finds itself almost trapped!

**28.c5?**

The decisive mistake. White should still be able to hold after 28.f6! gxf6 (28...♚xf6 29.♙xb7 ♜d7 30.♙xd7 ♚xd7 31.a3 is better for White, due to the queenside majority) 29.a3 ♚ac5 30.♚c2 ♚f8 31.♙g4 with active play for the pawn.

**28...♜f8 29.f6 ♚axc5 30.♙c4 ♚xf6 31.♙f7+ ♜e8 32.♙xg7 ♜d4 33.♙e2 ♜d7**

Miles was known for his excellent technique. This game is another case in point. Black won after:

**34.♜g5 ♜e7 35.♙f3 ♚d3+ 36.♚b1 ♚f4 37.h4 h6 38.♜f5 ♜f7 39.♚e2 ♚xe2 40.♙xe2 ♜g7 41.♙d3 ♚d7 42.♜f1 ♚c5 43.♙c2 a5 44.a3 ♜f7 45.♜g1+ ♜h7 46.b4 axb4 47.axb4 ♚a6 48.b5 ♚c5 49.h5 cxb5 50.♜g6 ♜c7 51.♙b6 ♜c6 52.♙xb5 ♜g7 53.♙b3 ♚f6 54.♙d5 ♜c7 55.♙b2 ♜g5 56.♜f2 ♚d3 57.♜f5+ ♜h4 58.♚a2 b5 59.♚b3 ♜c1 60.♜f6 ♜xh5 61.♙f7+ ♜g5 62.♜g6+ ♜f4 63.♙xh6 b4 64.♙d5 ♜c3+ 65.♚a2 ♜e3 66.♜d6 ♚d2 67.♙b3 ♜c7 68.♚b1 ♚c3 69.♙c2 ♚c5 70.♜d5 b3 71.♚c1 ♚b4 72.♙d1 ♚xe4+ 73.♚b2 ♚c3 74.♜d3 ♚xd1+ 0-1**

Another option after 1.c4 c6 2.e4 e5 3.d4, is 3...d6 which was employed by one of the leading players in the previous century, Salo Flohr. It transposes to the line 3.♚f3 d6 which is given below.

A much less explored move is **3...♚f6!** which I believe is equalizing immediately. Let's first look at **4.♚c3** by means of the game Wall-Lakdawala:

□ **Bill Wall**

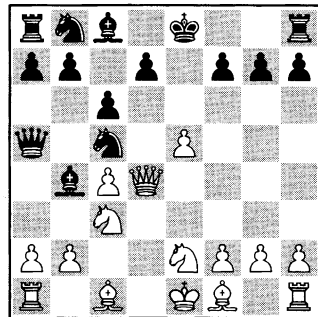
■ **Cyrus Lakdawala**

Kissimmee 1997

**1.c4 ♚f6 2.♚c3 c6 3.e4 e5 4.d4 ♙b4 5.dxe5 ♚xe4 6.♙d4 ♙a5!**

Very risky is 6...d5?!. Let's follow the game Tal-Garcia Gonzales, Sochi 1986: 7.cxd5 (7.exd6 0-0! gives Black a great initiative) 7...♙a5 8.♙xe4 ♙xc3+ 9.♚d1 cxd5?! (a better chance is 9...♙b4 although 10.d6 ♙e6 11.♙c4! isn't much fun for Black) 10.♙c2! (winning one of the bishops – and the game) 10...d4 11.bxc3 dxc3 12.♚e2 0-0 13.♙xc3 ♙a4+ 14.♚e1 ♙e6 15.♚d4 ♜c8 16.♙b5! 1-0.

**7.♚e2 ♚c5**



Now White faces serious problems. 8...♚b3 is threatened, but the knight may choose to go to e6 as well.

**8.g3?! ♚ba6?!**

There was nothing wrong with 8...♚b3 9.axb3 ♙xa1 10.♙g2 d6! 11.exd6 0-0 12.0-0 ♙a5 and by proceeding with ...♙e6 and ...♚d7 Black has a big advantage.

**9.♙g2 ♚e6**

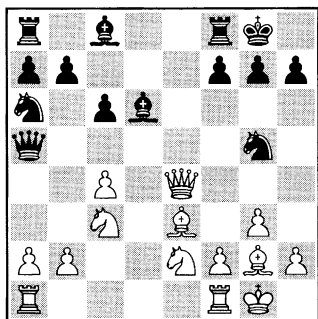
Now 9...♚b3 is less clear 10.axb3 ♙xa1 11.0-0 0-0 12.♚e4 with an initiative for the exchange. The game promises Black an easy game.

**10.♙e3 ♙c5 11.♙e4 d6!**



It's important to get rid of the e5-pawn that's hampering Black's development.

**12.exd6 ♖xd6 13.0-0 0-0 14.♖e3 ♘g5!**



**15.♗xg5 ♜xg5 16.♖ad1 ♖c7**

The bishop pair in combination with the better structure (c4 vs c6) secures a serious edge for Black.

**17.♞c2 ♗g4 18.♞c1 ♞xc1 19.♞xc1 ♖ad8 20.♞fd1 ♖e5 21.f3 ♖e6 22.b3 ♘c5 23.♘e4?!**

Black's advantage is growing fast.

**23...♘xe4 24.fxe4 g5 25.♖f2 f6 26.♖e3 ♖d6 27.♖f2 ♖d7 28.♘c3 ♖fd8 29.♖f1 ♗g4 30.♖d3 ♖e5 31.♞xd7 ♞xd7 32.♞c2 ♖d3 33.♘e2 ♖f7 34.♖e1 ♖c7 35.♖f2 ♖d7 36.♘c1 ♖d8 37.♘e2 ♖d1 38.♘c3?**

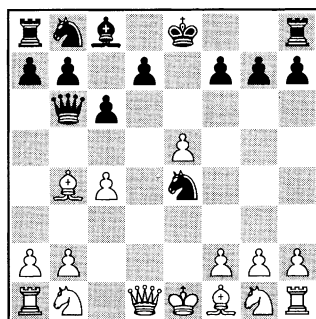
Allowing a sudden mate! White is of course much worse but with 38..♖f3 he could have prolonged the fight.

**38...♖b6+**

**0-1**

Instead of 4.♘c3 White may also try **4.dxe5** Black is fine though after: **4...♖b4+!**

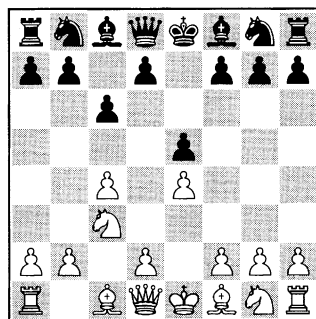
I like this new move very much. Black is also OK after 4...♘xe4 but he should avoid going in for 5.♖d3 ♞a5?! 6.♖d2 ♘xd2 7.♖xd2 ♞xe5+ 8.♖e2, when White is a pawn down but has almost finished his development and is ready to start an attack. Better is 5...d5 with equality. **5.♖d2 ♘xe4! 6.♖xb4 ♞b6**



With the double threat of mating on f2 and taking back the piece on b4. **7.♞c2 ♞xb4+ 8.♘c3 ♘xc3 9.♞xc3 ♞xc3+ 10.bxc3 ♘a6!** With ...♘c5 coming, and White's structure damaged, Black should be fine in this ending.

### Variation II

**3.♘c3?!**



This doesn't make much sense as the knight is not attacking Black's centre. Black is therefore given more options than in our main line (3.♘f3). Black could simply transpose to that main line with 3...♘f6 4.♘f3 but he could also choose to develop his bishop to c5 or b4.

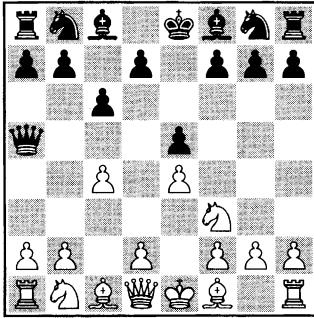
### Variation III

So it seems 3.♘f3 is the only way of fighting for an advantage.



**3.♟f3**

Black has various set-ups at his disposal.

**3...♖a5**

This is the SOS-reply, but in order to understand the merits of this early queen move I would like to give you my views on 3...d6 and 3...♟f6 first.

● After the passive 3...d6 White continues 4.d4 ♟d7 (if 4...♟g4 the ending 5.dxe5 ♟xf3 6.gxf3 – 6.♖xf3 dxe5 is pleasant for Black, due to square d4 – 6...dxe5 7.♗xd8+ ♟xd8 8.f4 f6! is not so much for White, as was seen in Seirawan-Nikolic, Tilburg 1990. But Rumanian grandmaster Mihai Suba showed the right plan for White. He played 5.d5! when the bishop on g4 is rather misplaced. After 5...♟e7 6.♟c3 ♟xf3 7.♖xf3 ♟g5 8.♖g3 ♟xc1 9.♖xc1 ♖f6 – 9...♟f8 would also run into 10.c5! – 10.c5! dxc5 11.dxc6 bxc6 12.♟a4 followed by ♟xc5, White had a big advantage in Suba-Ceteras, Sovata 1999) 5.♟c3 ♟gf6 6.♟e2 ♟e7 which is in fact the main line of the so called Old-Indian Defence. This defence is currently completely out of use. White has a lot of space, a big centre and therefore much reason for happiness. I would not like to recommend 3...d6.

● 3...♟f6 is more natural, as Black is challenging White's centre. White nevertheless managed to prove an advantage by playing 4.♟c3 ♟b4 5.♟xe5 0-0 (an old game Van den Hoek-Euwe, The Hague 1942, saw

Black comfortably equalizing with 5...♖e7 6.♟f3 ♟xe4 7.♟e2 0-0 8.0-0 d6 9.♖c2 ♟f6 10.d4 ♟g4. 53 Years later the right way of meeting 5...♖e7 was found: 6.♟d3! ♟xe4 7.♖e2 ♟xc3 8.dxc3 ♖xe2+ 9.♟xe2 ♟e7 10.♟f4! d6 11.0-0-0 ♟e6? 12.♟b4! and White went on to consume the d6-pawn in Votava-Meduna, Lazne Bohdanec 1995) 6.♟d3! ♟xc3 7.dxc3 ♟xe4 8.♟e2. An instructive game of Evgeny Bareev proceeded: 8...d6 (8...d5 9.cxd5 ♖xd5 10.0-0 is better for White because of the bishop pair) 9.0-0 ♟d7 10.♖e1 ♖f6 11.f3 ♟ec5 12.♟f2! (not exchanging on c5 which would 'awake' the sleepy knight on d7) 12...a5 13.♟e3 ♖e8 14.♖d2 a4 15.♖ad1 with a huge advantage. Bareev-Volkov, Elista Olympiad 1998.

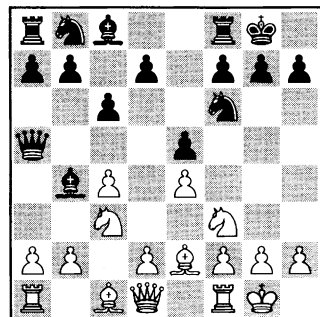
Our text move – 3...♖a5!? – is the move I would like to recommend to you. It looks quite odd at first sight but a closer look reveals its point. First of all, Black is defending his e-pawn and second, the advance d2-d4 is stopped. Last but not least, after ♟c3 Black will always play ...♟b4, again indirectly pressuring White's centre. White has to continue his development with

**4.♟e2 ♟f6 5.♟c3**

Or 4.♟c3 ♟f6 5.♟e2.

**5...♟b4 6.0-0 0-0**

which leads to the key position. By the way, we can quickly vote off 6...♟xc3?! 7.dxc3 ♟xe4, as it runs into 8.♟d3 ♟f6 9.♟xe5!.





The game Kortchnoi-Gurevich, Barcelona 1992, now continued with **7.d3**, and we will see how Black reaches an acceptable position after this.

□ Viktor Kortchnoi

■ Mikhail Gurevich

Barcelona 1992

**1.c4 c6 2.e4 e5 3.♟f3 ♚a5 4.♞c3 ♜f6 5.♙e2 ♜b4 6.0-0 0-0 7.d3**

We will examine 7.♚c2! in the next game.

**7...d5! 8.exd5**

Or 8.cxd5 ♙xc3 9.bxc3 cxd5 10.♞xe5 dxe4 11.♞c4 ♚c7 12.♙g5 ♞d5 13.♞c1 exd3 14.♚xd3 ♜f4 15.♙xf4 ♚xf4 (Nijboer-Miles, Groningen 1992) and now 16.♞d6 gives White some initiative. However, Black can improve with 14...♙e6 15.♙f3 ♜f4! (only now!) 16.♙xf4 ♚xf4 17.♞d6 ♜c6 18.♞xb7?! ♜e5 19.♚e4 ♜xf3+ 20.♚xf3 ♚xf3 21.gxf3 ♙xa2!.

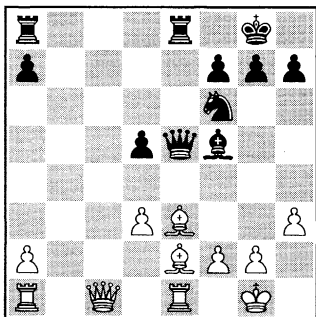
**8...cxd5 9.♞xe5 ♙xc3**

Not 9...d4 10.♞d5 ♞xd5 11.cxd5 ♚xd5 12.♙f4 followed by ♙f3 with pressure.

**10.bxc3 ♚xc3 11.♙f4 ♞c6**

11...♞e8 12.d4 ♜c6 13.♞xc6 bxc6 14.cxd5 ♜xd5 is perhaps an easier way to equalize.

**12.♞xc6 bxc6 13.♚c1 ♚d4 14.♙e3 ♚e5 15.♞e1 ♞e8 16.cxd5 cxd5 17.h3 ♙f5**



Although White has the two bishops Black doesn't experience any problems at all. The bishops are rather restrained and Black has no weaknesses.

**18.♚c5 ♞d7!**

The knight is on it's way to e6!

**19.♚b4 a5 20.♚h4 ♞f8 21.♞ac1 ♜e6**

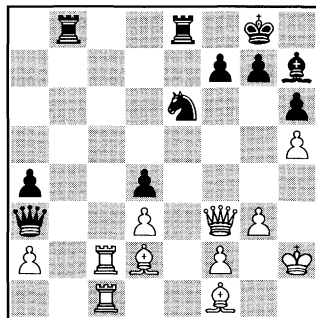
**22.♙f1 d4 23.♙d2 ♚d6 24.♚h5 ♙g6**

**25.♚f3 h6**

White already has to be careful. Black starts attacking the weaknesses on a2 and d3.

**26.h4 ♚a3 27.♞c2 ♞ac8 28.♞ec1 ♞b8**

**29.h5 ♙h7 30.g3 a4 31.♞h2**



**31...♚e7**

A more active alternative is 31...♞b2 32.♞xb2 ♚xb2 33.♚c6 ♞b8 34.♞c2 ♚b1 followed by a future ...a3 and ...♞b2.

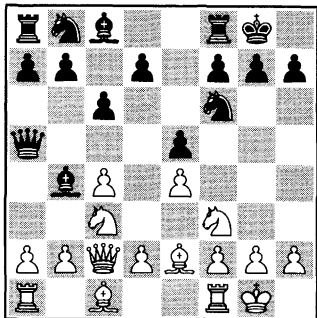
**32.♙h3 ♙g5?!**

Now White gets the opportunity to take over.

**33.♙g5 ♚xg5 34.♞c4** Most probably the players were in time-trouble here. White could have won a pawn with 34.♙d7! ♞ed8 35.♙xa4. **34...a3 35.♞1c2 ♚e5 36.♞c7 ♞e7 37.♞c8+ ♞e8 38.♞2c5 ♚f6 39.♚xf6 gxf6 40.♞xe8+ ♞xe8** Now the draw becomes obvious. **41.♞a5 ♞e2 42.♞xa3 ♞xf2+ 43.♞g1 ♞d2 44.♙f1 ♙f5 45.♞a4 ♞d1 46.♞xd4 ♙h3 47.♞f4** And because of 47...♙f1 48.♞xf1 ♞xd3 49.♞g2 ♞a3 50.♞f2 f5 the players agreed to a draw.



After 6...0-0 White's best is  
**7.♖c2!**



Before I will tell you how Black should respond it is important to investigate the game Ivanchuk-Miles first:

□ Vasily Ivanchuk

■ Anthony Miles

Biel 1989

**1.e4 c6 2.c4 e5 3.♟f3 ♖a5 4.♙e2 ♟f6  
 5.♗c3 ♙b4 6.0-0 0-0 7.♖c2!**

This is the most critical reply, stopping d7-d5.

**7...♞e8**

In practice this is the most popular response. The point of 7.♖c2! becomes clear in the line 7...d5 8.cxd5 cxd5 9.♟xd5 ♟xd5 10.exd5 ♖xd5 11.♙c4 ♖d6 12.♟g5! g6 13.♟xf7! ♜xf7 14.♙xf7+ ♟xf7 15.♖xc8 winning. So Black is unable to free itself immediately with ...d5.

Your author also didn't find the right way of playing: 7...d6 8.a3 ♙xc3 9.dxc3 ♙g4 10.♟h4! ♙xe2 11.♖xe2 and with the knight heading for f5 White had a great position in Postny-I'Ami, Hoogeveen 2006.

However the best move is 7...♟a6. I will come back to this at the end of the chapter.

**8.a3**

Now Black faces another choice, retreating

the bishop to f8 or taking on c3 followed by d7-d5.

Please note that 8...d5 is not possible on account of 9.axb4! ♖xa1 10.d4! when the queen on a1 is almost trapped and White is very active as well.

I don't like 8...♙xc3 9.dxc3 d5 10.cxd5 cxd5 11.exd5 e4! 12.♟d4 ♖xd5 which is all rather forced and was played a number of times. White usually goes 13.♙f4 and it's surprisingly hard to find a move for Black. 13...♙g4 is met by 14.♙xg4! ♟xg4 15.♖e2! ♟e5 16.♖b5 ♖xb5 17.♟xb5 with problems for Black, while 13...♟c6 14.♟b5 is no picnic either.

**8...♞f8**

The move 8...♞f8 was played various times by Tony Miles but in the present game he faced serious difficulties.

**9.d4 d6**

Black's position is passive but quite solid. It is interesting to see how Ivanchuk shows the drawbacks of Black's strategy.

A new way of attempting to equalize was seen in the game Murariu-Kallio, Budapest 2005: (after 9.d4) 9...exd4 10.♟xd4 d6 11.♙f4 ♟bd7 which resembles a King's Indian Defence with ...exd4. White is slightly better, a possible way of playing is ♜ad1, h3, ♙h2 with pressure. It seems that if we follow the well-trodden path Black faces some difficulties.

**10.h3 ♟bd7 11.♙e3 a6 12.dxe5! ♟xe5**  
 12...dxe5 13.b4 ♖c7 14.c5 followed by ♟d2-c4, gives White a clear edge.

**13.♟d4 ♖c7 14.♜ac1 b6 15.f4 ♟g6  
 16.g4!**

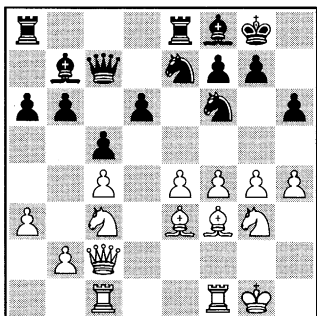
If this is possible, then something went wrong.

**16...♙b7 17.♟f5 c5 18.♙f3 h6  
 19.h4?!**

The prophylactic 19.♜ce1 (defending the bishop on e3) deserves attention, before starting actions on the kingside.



19...♖e7 20.♗g3



20...g6?!

Instead 20...d5! 21.e5 (21.exd5 ♖exd5 hands the initiative to Black) 21...♗g4! 22.♗xg4 d4 23.♖ce4 dxe3 24.♖d6 ♗ed8 and ...♗c6 next looks at least no worse for Black.

21.g5 ♖d7 22.♗d2 ♗ad8 23.♖cd1 b5 24.cxb5 ♖b6 25.♗e2

And Ivanchuk offered a draw. He was probably afraid of 25.♗e2 d5!? but I would still prefer White after 26.bxa6 ♗c6 27.♖b5 ♗b8 28.a7 ♗b7 29.♗xc5 ♖f5!? 30.exf5 ♗xc5+ 31.♖h2.

Now let's return to the position after

1.c4 c6 2.e4 e5 3.♖f3 ♗a5 4.♗e2 ♖f6 5.♖c3 ♗b4 6.0-0 0-0 7.♗c2!

As I mentioned Black should play

7...♖a6!?

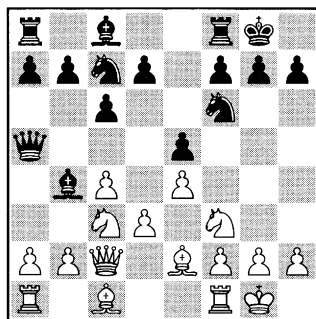
This move was only seen twice in practice, but it deserves more practical tests.

8.d3

White can also try 8.a3 ♗xc3 9.dxc3 ♖c5! and now 10.b4 allows 10...♗a4, while 10.♖xe5 ♖cxe4 followed by d7-d5 should be OK for Black as well.

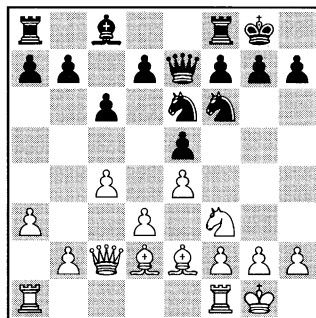
8...♖c7!?

After 8...♗xc3 9.bxc3 h6 (Polak-Jirka, Czech tt 2002/03), the move 10.d4! secures a solid advantage for White. I would therefore prefer to postpone taking on c3 with the text.



9...♗d2

With the idea to take back on c3 with the bishop. Instead 9...♗g5 ♖e6 10.♗xf6 gxf6 looks better for Black. Also harmless is 9.a3 ♗xc3 10.♗xc3 ♗xc3 11.bxc3 d6 with an equal position (12.c5 d5!). Black should play 9...♖e6 10.a3 ♗e7! 11.♖d5 ♗d8 12.♖xe7+ ♗xe7



and because of 13.♖xe5? ♖d4 Black faces no problems at all.

We can draw some conclusions:

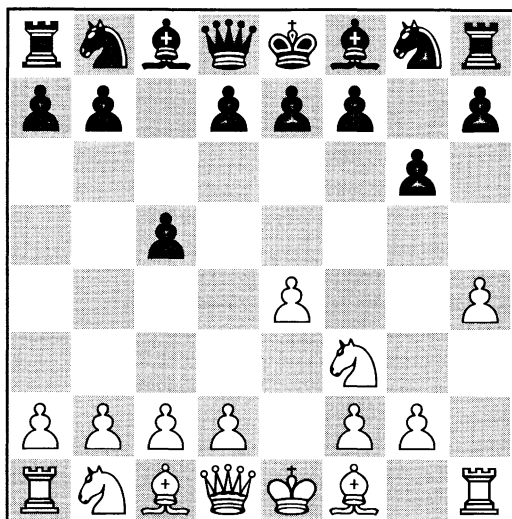
- After 2...e5 3.d4, 3...♖f6! is the way to equalize.
- 3.♖c3 has little independent meaning.
- Black – after 3.♖f3 – should continue 3...♗a5 and I believe Black is OK in the line 4.♖c3 ♖f6 5.♗e2 ♗b4 6.0-0 0-0 7.♗c2 ♖a6!?
- The whole system is perfectly playable!



## CHAPTER 5

*John Donaldson and Jeremy Silman*

### 3.h4 in the Hyper-Accelerated Dragon



1.e4 c5 2.f3 g6 3.h4

The Dragon Sicilian has always enjoyed popularity but the fierce attack that Black's King is often subjected to in the Yugoslav Attack (1.e4 c5 2.f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.fxd4 f6 5.c3 g6 6.e3 g7 7.f3) is not to everyone's taste. This helps to explain the following for its little cousin the Accelerated Dragon (1.e4 c5 2.f3 c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.fxd4 g6). By leaving the d-pawn on its original square Black in many cases hopes to play ...d7-d5 in one jump.

This strategy can be seen in variations like 1.e4 c5 2.f3 c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.fxd4 g6 5.c3 g7 6.e3 f6 7.c4 0-0 8.b3 a5 9.f3 d5 and 1.e4 c5 2.f3 c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.fxd4 g6 5.c3 g7 6.e3 f6

7.c4 0-0 8.b3 e6 with ...d7-d5 to follow.

Because 8.b3 is necessary in this move order (8.f3 running into 8...♖b6) Black also has the possibility of transposing into a Dragon where White might have preferred to have castled queenside or played h4 in lieu of placing the bishop on b3 so early. One example is 8.b3 d6 9.f3 e7 10.♖d2 fxd4 11.fxd4 b5 – a Dragon variation that arises almost exclusively from an Accelerated Dragon move order.

Yet one other way of sidestepping the Yugoslav Attack in the Dragon is via 1.e4 c5 2.f3 c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.fxd4 g6 5.c3 g7 6.e3 f6 7.c4 ♖a5 which forces White



to castle short due to the threats of ...♟xe4 and ...♞b4.

Finally, it should also be added that sometimes Dragon players who are not afraid of the Yugoslav Attack adopt the Accelerated move order to sidestep 9.0-0-0 in the regular Dragon.

We have seen that by the move order 1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 ♘c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♟xd4 Black has several ways to dampen White's attacking chances compared to the normal Dragon move order, but what does he give up in return?

The answer is clearly the Maroczy Bind with 5.c4. Once avoided at almost all cost the Bind now exists in a state of flux. Many modern grandmasters prefer to avoid conceding their opponent a clear space advantage so early in the game. But others, most notably Ivanchuk, Malakhov, and Tiviakov, find the trade-off between king safety and a space disadvantage a fair exchange. Particularly in the Gurgendize line (5.c4 ♟f6 6.♘c3 d6 7.♙e2 ♟xd4 8.♞xd4 ♙g7 9.♙e3 0-0 followed by ...♙e6, ...a6, ...♞a5 and ...♜fc8) Black has concrete play yielding good chances to equalize. What he doesn't have are opportunities to play for more unless White really overextends. Many lines where White plays ♟d5 and trades all the pieces make this an unacceptable way to play for a win for Black. There are other ways to combat the Maroczy, for example ...♟h6 and ...f5 or the double fianchetto with ...b6, but these require Black to take some strategic risks that are not to everyone's taste.

What to do then if you want to avoid the Yugoslav Attack and not have to face the Maroczy Bind? The answer is the Hyper-Accelerated Dragon (1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 g6). One idea behind the delayed development of the knight to c6 is that it allows Black to avoid the Rossolimo Attack (2...♟c6 3.♙b5). This

explains the move order 1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 g6 3.d4 cxd4 whereby 4.♟xd4 ♘c6 transposes back into the Accelerated and 4.♞xd4 is a world onto its own. What it does not do is avoid the Maroczy.

Black accomplishes this goal by delaying exchanging on d4 with 3...♙g7. Then 4.c4 can be met by 4...♞b6, 4...♞a5+ and 4...d6 with the idea 5.♟c3 ♞a5. All three lines have their followers; in particular the first has been played by many 2600+ grandmasters. Each one produces positions that are much more unbalanced than those typically arising from the Maroczy Bind.

So what is a white player to do who wants to take the fight to Black? There are lines like 1.e4 c5 2.♟f3 g6 3.d4 ♙g7 4.dxc5 ♞a5+ and now 5.c3 ♞xc5 6.♟a3 or 5.♟c3 sacrificing a pawn for attacking chances. But why not be particularly direct? How about 3.h4!? There are only 39 games with this move in Mega Database 2006. World Champion Boris Spassky has given it his blessing, as have fellow grandmasters Akopian, Golod, Hector, Ivanovic and Velimirovic. It seems to have been first used in Spassky-Stein, Spartakiad 1965 and Velimirovic-Ostojic, Belgrade (October) 1965, but it is IM Almira Skripchenko who has played it the most.

If you look for material on 3.h4 you will be disappointed. Raymond Keene gave it a paragraph in his booklet on the Hyper-Accelerated Dragon for Chessman Quarterly more than thirty years ago and similar space was allocated to the move in Schwarz's *Sizilianisch I* (1975), Donaldson and Silman's *Accelerated Dragons* (1998) and Nielsen and Hansen's *The Sicilian Accelerated Dragon* (1998). As one might expect with such limited practical examples and theoretical material there is no real



theory. In this article we will make an attempt to organize the existing material, evaluate Black's main tries and suggest new ideas.

In answer to 3.h4, which Nielsen and Hansen characterize as 'a good, provocative idea based on sound principles', Black has seven replies which can be characterized into four groups:

- I 3...♖c6 and 3...♙g7
- II 3...h5 and 3...h6
- III 3...d5 and 3...♘f6
- IV 3... ♙h6?!

## I Ignoring the threat of h5 – 3...♖c6 and 3...♙g7

### Game 1

□ Boris Spassky

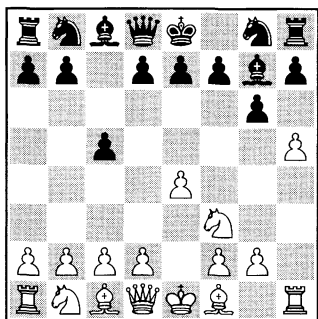
■ Leonid Stein

Soviet Union 1965

### 1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 g6 3.h4 ♙g7

This move and 3...♖c6 – which can often transpose, both give White a free hand to continue his plan unimpeded. Allowing h4-h5-h6 does not look like a good idea.

### 4.h5



### 4...♖c6

4...d6 was tried by the late Alex Wojtkie-

wicz, a true fan of the Hyper-Accelerated, against Almira Skripchenko in one of the Marshall Masters tournaments in New York. After 5.♙c4 ♖c6 6.d3 ♘f6 7.h6 ♙f8 8.♙g5 e6 9.e5!? dxe5 (9...♖xe5? 10.♖xe5 dxe5 11.♙b5+ ♙d7 12.♙xd7+ ♘xd7 13.♖f3±) 10.♙b5 ♖a5+ 11.♖c3 ♘d7 12.♙xc6 (12.♖xe5 ♖xe5 13.♙f6 ♙g8 14.♙xe5 ♙d7 15.♙f6 g5 16.♖h5 – 16.♖f3 ♙g6 – 16...a6 17.♙a4 ♙g6 equal) 12...bxc6 13.♖xe5 White was slightly better.

### 5.♖c3

5.♙c4 was seen in the David vs Goliath encounter Saldano-Malakhov, Porto San Giorgio 1996, where the future world class GM – already rated over 2500 – faced an inspired amateur. The result was not typical: 5...e6 6.♖c3 a6 (6...♖ge7) 7.a3 b5 8.♙a2 ♙b7 9.d3 ♖ge7 10.♖xe5 ♖a5 11.h6 ♙xc3+ 12.bxc3 ♖xc3+ 13.♙d2 ♖f6 14.♙g5 ♖c3+ 15.♙d2 ♖f6 16.♙g5 (draw) 16...♖b2 (no draw) 17.0-0 f6 18.♙b1 ♖xa3 (18...♖xa2 is too risky – 19.♙xf6 0-0 (19...♙f8 20.♙a1) 20.♙a1) 19.♙xf6 0-0 20.♙a1 ♖b4 21.c3 ♖b2 22.♙g7 ♙f7 23.♙xe6! (draw!!) 23...dxe6 24.♙b1 ♖a3 25.♙a1 ♖b2 26.♙b1 ½-½.

### 5...e6

Here 5...d6 6.♙c4 ♖f6 7.h6 ♙f8 8.d4 cxd4 9.♖xd4 ♖b6 10.♖b3 ♖g4 11.♖e2 ♖ge5 12.♙e3 ♖d8 13.♙d5 e6 14.♙xc6+ bxc6 15.0-0-0±, Arancibia-Andres, Buenos Aires 1996, is another example that suggests that allowing h6 is not a good idea.

### 6.d3

Bozidar Ivanovic tried an interesting idea against Matthiesen at Saint Vincent in 2005. The Montenegrin GM played 6.♙b5 to get rid of his king bishop, which would be a target on c4 and locked in on e2. After 6...♖ge7 7.♙xc6 ♖xc6 8.d3 d6 9.♙g5 ♖a5 10.♙f1 ♙g8 (10...gxh5 11.♙d2 ♖c7 12.♙xh5 a6 is one possible improvement) 11.hxg6 hxg6 12.e5 d5 (12...♖xe5 13.♖e4 ♖c7 14.♖f6+ ♙xf6 15.♙xf6 ♖g4 16.♙c3 f5 is another try)



13.♖e2 b5 14.♗h7 b4 15.♘d1 ♖c7 16.♙e3  
♘d4 17.♙xd4 cxd4 18.♙g4 ♗h8 19.♗xh8+  
♙xh8 the game was definitely in White's fa-  
vour.

**6...d5 7.♙g5 ♖b6**

Not pretty is 7...♙ge7 8.h6 ♙f8 9.♙f6.

**8.♙d2! ♙ge7 9.♙a4 ♖c7 10.♙xc5  
♙xb2 11.♗b1 ♙g7 12.♙e2**

12.h6 ♙f6 13.♙e2 was a major alternative.

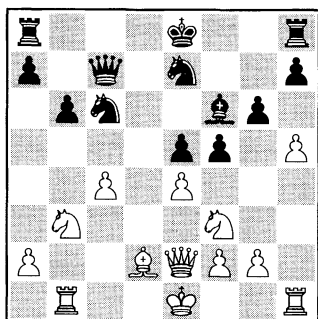
**12...b6 13.♙b3 e5**

Here 13...dxe4 14.dxe4 gxh5 15.♗xh5 ♙g6  
looks very pleasant for Black who has an ex-  
cellent grip on e5.

**14.c4 dxe4 15.dxe4 ♙g4**

Again 15...gxh5 16.♗xh5 ♙g6 was a viable  
alternative.

**16.♙h2 ♙xe2 17.♖xe2 f5 18.♙f3 ♙f6**



**19.hxg6**

Keene suggests that 19.c5 would have given  
White the slightly better chances. After the  
text the game eventually ended in a draw.

## II Blocking the h-pawn's advance 3...h5 and 3...h6

### Game 2

□ Dragoljub Velimirovic

■ Predrag Ostojic

Belgrade 1965

**1.e4 c5 2.♙f3 g6 3.h4 h5**

This is a much more solid response by  
Black. Now the question is who has been  
helped or weakened more by the advance of  
the h-pawns?

**4.d4**

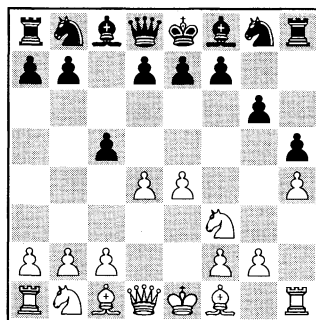
Besides 4.d4 White can try development  
schemes based on ♙c4 and d3, or ♙c4 with  
c3 aiming for d4. They shouldn't frighten  
Black.

● 4.♙c4, and now:

– 4...e6?! (the right idea but the timing is  
wrong) 5.d4! cxd4 6.♖xd4 with an advan-  
tage for White.

– 4...♙g7 (this is the most precise) 5.c3 e6!  
6.d4 cxd4 7.cxd4 d5 8.exd5 exd5 9.♙b5+  
♙c6 (9...♙d7 10.♙xd7+ ♙xd7 11.0-0 ♙e7  
12.♖b3±) 10.0-0 ♙e7 with equal chances.  
Remember this plan with ...e6 and ...d5 – it  
will come up again.

● 4.♙c3 ♙g7 5.a3 ♙f6 6.♙c4 ♙c6 7.d3 d6  
8.♙g5 0-0 9.f4 e6 (9...♙g4!?) 10.♙a2 d5  
11.0-0 d4 (another option was opening the  
position with 11...dxe4 when both 12.dxe4  
♖xd1 13.♗xd1 ♙d4 and 12.♙cxe4 ♙xe4  
13.♙xe4 ♙d4 look fine for Black) 12.♙b1  
♙h7 13.♙d2 e5 14.♙xh7 ♙xh7 15.♙b3  
♖e7 ½-½ Kurajica-Sosonko, Wijk aan Zee  
1977.

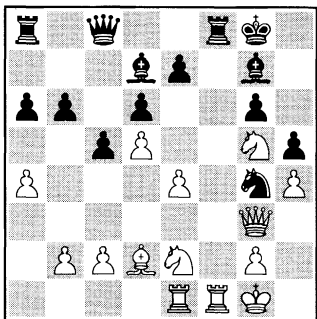


**4...♙g7 5.d5**

Going for a Benoni type of position. See the  
next game for 5.♙c3.



5...d6 6.♘c3 ♘g4 7.♙d3 a6 8.a4 ♘d7  
9.♘g5 ♘e5 10.♙g3 ♘d7 11.♙e2 ♘h6  
12.0-0 b6 13.♙d2 0-0 14.♖ae1 ♙b8  
15.f4 ♘eg4 16.♙xg4 ♘xg4 17.f5 ♙c8  
18.fxg6 fxg6 19.♙e2

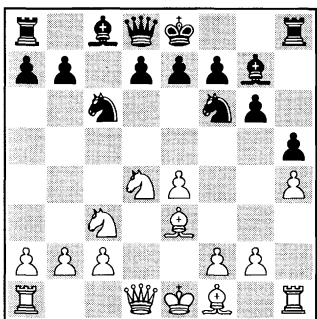


Keene felt White had a positional advantage in 1969; today Fritz thinks Black is slightly better! Black won in the end (57 moves).

### Game 3

□ Andrzej Sydor  
■ Bogdan Pietrusiak  
Rzeszow ch-POL 1966

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 g6 3.h4 h5 4.d4 ♘g7  
5.♘c3 cxd4 6.♘xd4 ♘c6 7.♙e3 ♘f6



Again the question is who is favoured by the

inclusion of h4 and ...h5?

### 8.f3

After 8.♙c4 Black has several options:

● 8...♘g4 This move is possible but better held in reserve. 9.♘xc6 bxc6 (9...♘xe3? 10.♙xf7+!) 10.♙d4 0-0 11.♙xg7 ♘xg7 12.f3 ♘e5 looks a little better for White.

● 8...d6 9.f3 ♙b6 10.♘f5 ♙xb2 11.♘xg7+ ♘f8 12.♘d5 ♘xd5 13.♘d5 ♘xg7. The extra moves h4 and ...h5 are definitely helping Black here as ...h5 is a typical move for the second player in this setup while h4 does nothing for White.

● 8...0-0 and now White has three different tries but none seem particularly promising:

– 9.♘xc6 bxc6 10.♙b3 ♙a5 (10...d5! looks the cleanest and most direct plan for Black – 11.exd5 ♘xd5 12.♘xd5 cxd5 13.♙xd5 ♙b8 14.0-0 ♙xb2 with a slight edge to Black due to his better pawn structure) 11.♙d2 ♙a6 12.f3 ♙ab8 13.0-0-0 d6 14.♘a4 ♙xd2+ 15.♙xd2 c5 16.e5 dxe5 17.♘xc5± Grabarczyk-Pedzich, Poraj 1997.

– 9.f3 ♙b6 10.♙b3 ♘xe4 11.♘d5 ♙a5+ 12.c3 ♘g3 (thanks to h4!) 13.♙h3 ♙xd4 14.♙xd4 ♘f5 15.♙f2 e6 16.♘f6+ ♘g7 17.♘e4 d5 18.♘g3 ♘fe7 with a near decisive position for Black.

– 9.♙b3 ♘g4 (thanks to ...h5) 10.♘xc6 ♘xe3 11.♘xd8 ♘xd1 12.♙xd1 ♙xd8 equal.

● 8...♙a5! 9.0-0 (unfortunately necessary as 9.f3?! ♙b4 10.♙b3 ♘xe4 11.♘xc6 ♙xc3+ 12.bxc3 ♙xc3+ 13.♙e2 dxc6 and 9.♙d2?! ♙b4 10.♙b3 ♘xe4 both hand the point to Black just as surely as they do without h4 and ...h5 thrown in) 9...0-0 and now the two main lines with ♘b3 and ♙b3 look a little odd with the irrelevant and possibly weakening h4 thrown in.

Note that 8.♘xc6 is not an option as after 8...bxc6 9.e5 Black has 9...♘g4.

### 8...♙b6

It looks very odd to play ...♙b6 before ...d6 and ♙c4, and we don't recommend it, but



maybe it's playable. If 9.♘f5 ♖xb2 10.♙xg7+ ♕f8 and ...h5 prevents ♗h6 so the knight is trapped.

8...0-0 9.♘b3 (9.♖d2 d5) 9...a5 10.♗b5 (10.a4 ♘b4 11.e5 ♘h7! – another benefit of ...h5!: the knight doesn't have to go back to e8 – 12.f4 d6 and White's centre is crumbling) 10...d5 11.♗xc6 (11.exd5 ♘b4 12.♗c4 ♖c7) 11...bxc6 12.e5 ♘d7 13.f4 ♘b6 14.♗xb6 ♖xb6 was fine for Black in Perciun-Slovinanu, Predeal 2006.

**9.♘cb5 ♖a5+ 10.c3 a6 11.♘b3 ♖d8 12.♗d4 d6**

Black has reached an acceptable Dragon position where the knight on b3 looks out of place.

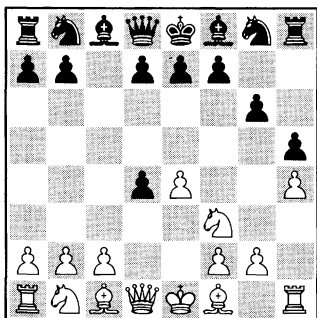
## Game 4

□ **Andres Rodriguez**

■ **Bent Larsen**

San Martin 1994

**1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 g6 3.h4 h5 4.d4 cxd4**



As usual Black has a choice between this move and 4...♗g7 – play can easily transpose.

After 4...♗g7 5.c3!? cxd4 6.cxd4 d5 White should play 7.exd5, as after 7.e5 the inclusion of h4/...h5 helps Black. For example:

7...♗g4 8.♗e2 ♘c6 9.0-0 ♗xf3 (9...♘h6 is the other way of completing development) 10.♗xf3 e6 11.♘c3 a6 12.g3 ♘ge7 13.♗g5?! ♖b6 14.♗e3 ♘f5 15.♘a4 ♖c7 16.♖c1 0-0 with somewhat better chances for Black in Dimitrijevic-Kaposztas, Budapest 2004.

**5.♗c4**

5.♖xd4 along the lines of 2...g6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♖xd4 doesn't look dangerous: 5...♘f6 6.♘c3 ♘c6 7.♖d3 (7.♖a4 is simply met by 7...♗g7 as g4 is available to Black's knight) 7...♗g7 8.♗g5 d6 9.♗e2 0-0 10.0-0 ♗g4 11.a3 ♘d7 12.♖d2 ♘h7 (12...♘c5 13.♗h6 ♗xh6 14.♖xh6 ♗xf3 15.♗xf3 ♘d4 16.♗d1 e5 was sharp but seemingly possible: 17.f4 ♖xh4 18.f5 ♘xe4 19.♘xe4 ♖xe4 20.f6 ♘e6 21.c3 ♖h4) 13.♗e3 ♗xf3 14.♗xf3 ♘ce5 15.♗e2 ♘b6 Galego-Silva, Lisbon 1997. By the way, 15...♖c8 was another way to eye the c4 square. In both this line and the game continuation chances are equal.

**5...♘c6**

5...♗g7 looks more exact: 6.c3 e6 (6...d3 7.♖xd3 ♘f6 8.♘g5 e6 9.e5 ♘g4 10.f4 ♖b6 11.♘e4 0-0 12.♖d4 d5!, 0-1 Paredes-Estrada, Madrid 2002, is a pretty miniature, but we don't trust 6...d3 and consider 6...e6 a reliable equalizer) 7.cxd4 d5 8.exd5 exd5 9.♗b5+ (it's quite nice to win a tempo like this) 9...♘c6 (9...♗d7 10.♗xd7+ ♖xd7 11.♘e5 looks annoying) 10.0-0 ♘e7 with even chances. The inclusion of h4/...h5 looks odd here.

**6.c3 dxc3?**

Too greedy! Instead, 6...e6 7.cxd4 d5 8.exd5 exd5 9.♗b5 ♘e7 10.♗g5 ♗g7 11.♖e2 ♗e6 looks fine for Black. Accepting the pawn gives White a vastly improved Smith-Morra Gambit.

**7.♘c3 ♘f6 8.♗f4 d6?**

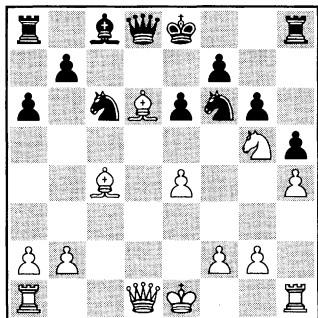
Larsen had to play 8...♗g7.

**9.♗g5 e6 10.♘b5**

White is already winning!



10...a6 11.♖xd6+ ♕xd6 12.♙xd6



12...♖a5+

Or 12...♖e7 13.♙e5 ♖xd1+ 14.♙xd1 ♖eg8 15.♙d8+! ♖e7 16.♖e2 and ♙hd1 will end things shortly.

13.b4! ♖d8

If 13...♖xb4 White simply castles leaving Black helpless with his king stuck in the centre. In the game Larsen was helpless too.

14.♙h3 ♖g4 15.♙b3 a5 16.♖d2 a4 17.♙c4 ♖b6 18.♙d1 f6 19.♙c5 ♖c7 20.♖xe6 ♙xe6 21.♙xe6 ♙d8 22.♙d3 ♙xd3 23.♖xd3 ♖ge5 24.♖b5 ♙h7 25.♙d6 ♖g7 26.♖xa4 1-0

## Game 5

□ Vitali Golod

■ Mark Berkovich

Rishon-Le-Zion ch-ISR 2002 (rapid)

1.e4 c5 2.♖f3 g6 3.h4!? h6!?

This is the only game we have been able to find with this modest move, but the idea of meeting h5 with ...g5 makes good positional sense. Black eyes the white h-pawn but does not give up the g5 square as he does after 3...h5.

4.♙c4 ♙g7 5.c3

Golod has suggested 5.h5 with the follow-up 5...g5 6.d4, which he evaluates as unclear.

One point is 6...cxd4 7.♖xd4 ♖c6 8.♖f5!. In view of the lack of promising continuations in the game White might want to examine this possibility more closely.

5...e6 6.♖e2

6.d4 cxd4 7.cxd4 d5 8.exd5 exd5 leads to positions often reached with the black pawn on h5 instead of h6. Those positions are usually satisfactory for Black and with the pawn on h6, retaining control of g5, they should be even better.

6...♖e7 7.d3 ♖bc6 8.♙b3 ♖c7

8...d5 9.e5 was White's intention.

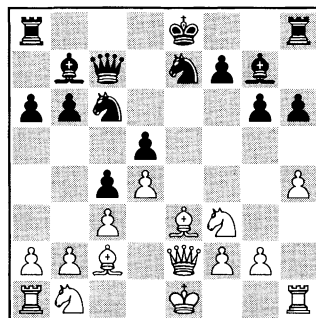
9.♙e3 b6 10.♖a3

10.d4 was a better move according to Golod. Now Black gets the better of it with some clever play.

10...♙a6! 11.♙c4 ♙b7

Black's tricky play has brought the bishop to c4, where it is a perfect target for ...d5.

12.d4 d5 13.exd5 exd5 14.♙d3 c4 15.♙c2 a6 16.♖b1



16...0-0-0!?

After 16...0-0 17.♖d2 ♙ae8 18.♖f1 h5 19.♙h6 ♙c8 Black would have a clear advantage.

17.b3 ♙he8 18.♖bd2 b5 19.a4 b4 20.bxc4 bxc3

Golod has suggested 20...f5 21.g3 dxc4 as best but the text should also be fine.

21.♖b3 dxc4 22.♖c5 ♖xd4

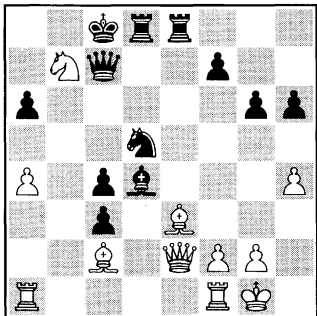


22...♖d5 was also good but there is no reason to fault the text.

**23.♜xd4 ♜xd4 24.♞xb7 ♜d5**

24...♜xb7 25.♞b1+ ♜a7 26.0-0 ♜f5 27.♜xf5 ♜xe3 28.fxe3 ♞d2 was at least better for Black.

**25.0-0**



**25...♜xe3?**

25...♜xb7 was winning for Black, but Berkovich has something prettier but not necessarily stronger in mind.

**26.♜xd8 ♞g3! 27.fgx3??**

Necessary was 27.fxe3 ♜xe3+ (27...♞xe3?? 28.♞xc4+ 28.♞f2 (28.♜h1 ♞xh4 mate) 28...♜c5! 29.♜e4 (29.♞xe8?? ♞xf2+ 30.♜h2 ♞xh4 mate) 29...♞xh4 with advantage to Black in all variations – Golod. But after 30.♞b7+ ♜b8 31.♞f3 ♞xf2+ 32.♞xf2 ♜xf2+ 33.♜xf2 ♞xd8 34.♜xa6 it would seem White is not worse and in fact has the better chances.

**27...♜g4+??**

Black misses an easy win with: 27...♜xc2+ 28.♞f2 ♜xf2+ 29.♜xf2 (worse is 29.♞xf2 ♜xa1 30.♜xf7 ♞e1+) 29...♜xa1 30.♞xa1 ♞xd8 31.♞c1 ♞d3.

**28.♞f2 ♜xf2 29.♜xf7! ♞e2 30.♜xg6 c2 31.♞ac1 ♜d3+ 32.♜h2 ♜b2? 33.♜d6+ ♜d7 34.♜xc4 ♜xc1 35.♜xb2 ♜b3 36.♜d3 ♞d2 37.♜c1 ♞d1 38.♞f7+ 1-0**

Clearly, rapid chess can be exciting!

### III Counter-attack 3...d5 and 3...♜f6

#### Game 6

□ Dmitry Posokhov  
■ Anatoly Demkovich  
Kharkov 2004

**1.e4 c5 2.♜f3 g6 3.h4 d5**

If there were a way to punish 3.h4 it would seem like 3...d5 and 3...♜f6 would be the first moves to examine. After all what can be more logical than meeting a flank attack with play in the centre. And yet, 3...d5 might be one of Black's worst possibilities after 3.h4.

**4.exd5 ♜f6**

4...♞xd5 has the virtue of not dropping a pawn but the loss of time incurred by capturing with the queen is soon felt. One doesn't often see a Scandinavian Defence with ...c5 thrown in. 5.♜c3 ♞d8 6.♜c4 (the immediate 6.h5 also makes sense) 6...♜g7 7.h5 ♜h6 8.d3 ♜c6 9.♜f4 ♜g4 (9...f6 10.hxg6 hxg6 11.♞d2 ♜f5 12.♞xh8+ ♜xh8 13.0-0 e5 14.♜e3 ♜cd4 15.♞h1 ♜g7 16.♜h4± Skripchenko-Hagarova, Istanbul Olympiad 2000) 10.hxg6 hxg6 11.♞d2 ♜xf3 12.gxf3 ♜f5 13.0-0-0 with a nice advantage in Vulevic-Boskovic, Yugoslavia 2000.

**5.c4**

A worthwhile alternative is 5.♜b5+ ♜bd7 6.♜c3 (6.c4 ♜g7 7.0-0 0-0 8.d4 a6 9.♜xd7 ♜xd7 10.♞e1 was also very strong) 6...♜g7 7.h5 ♜xh5 8.♜g5 0-0-9.♜xh7 ♜xh7 10.g4± Treger-P.Ross, New York 1999.

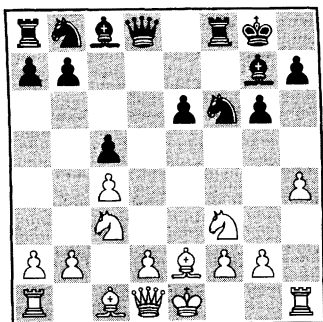
**5...♜g7 6.♜e2**

The immediate 6.d4 might be better: 6...cxd4 (6...♜a6 7.♜e2 0-0 8.0-0) 7.♜xd4 0-0 8.♜e2 e6 9.dxe6 fxe6 10.♜c3 and Black does not have enough for the pawn.

**6...0-0 7.♜c3 e6 8.dxe6 fxe6**

The more natural 8...♜xe6 is met by 9.d4 ♜fd7 10.dxc5 ♞e8 11.0-0±.



**9.d4**

This is more to the point than 9.d3 ♘c6 10.♗e4 ♗xe4 11.dxe4 ♗d4 12.e5 ♗xf3+ 13.♙xf3 ♖xd1+ 14.♙xd1 ♙xe5 15.h5 ♙d7 16.♙b1 ♙d4 17.hxg6 hxg6 18.♙e3 ♙xe3 19.fxe3 ♙ad8 ½-½ Posokho-Demkovich, Kiev 2004 – played one month later!

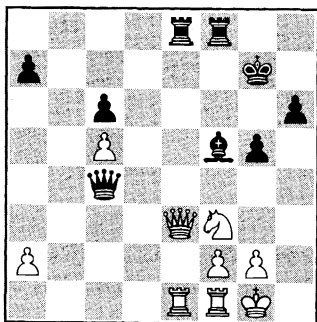
**9...cxd4 10.♖xd4 ♗d5 11.♖d2 ♗xc3 12.bxc3 ♖f6 13.♙b2 e5**

13...♗c6 14.0-0 ♙d8 15.♖g5 also leaves White with an edge.

**14.0-0 ♗c6 15.c5 h6 16.♙c4+ ♗h8 17.♙ae1 ♙g4 18.♗h2 ♙f5 19.♙d5 ♖xh4 20.♗f3 ♖f4 21.♖e3 ♙ae8 22.c4 g5**

22...♖xe3 23.♙xe3 e4 24.♙xg7+ ♗xg7 25.♗d2 leaves White with some advantage in the ending.

**23.♙xc6 bxc6 24.♙xe5 ♖xc4 25.♙xg7+ ♗xg7**

**26.♖a3**

If 26.♗e5 then 26...♖d5 is the right reply and not 26...♖xa2? 27.♖c3 ♖c2 (27...♗h7 28.♙a1) 28.♖d4 ♗g8 29.♗xc6 which wins for White.

After the text White has a slight pull. He won after 53 moves.

**Game 7**

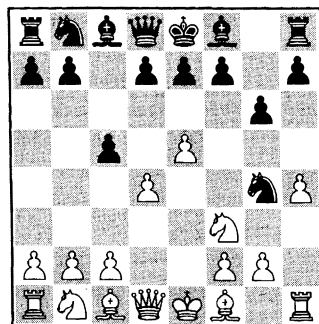
□ Jonny Hector

■ Kjetil Lie

Karlstad 2005

**1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 g6 3.h4 ♗f6 4.e5 ♗g4 5.d4**

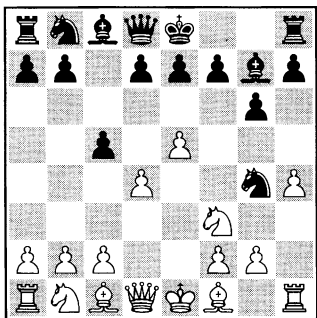
5.c3 d6 and 5.h5 ♙g7 both look fine for Black.

**5...cxd4**

This leads to wild positions. If Black wants something a little more orthodox we suggest not to play 5...♗c6?, which led to a speedy disaster in Akopian-Paschall, CCA International 1999, after 6.d5! ♗cxe5?! (6...♗b8 looks necessary) 7.♗xe5 ♗xe5 8.f4 ♖c7 9.d6 ♖xd6 10.♖xd6 exd6 11.fxe5 dxe5 12.♗c3 ♙e7 13.♙h6 d6 14.0-0-0 ♙g4 15.♙d2 a6 16.♗d5 ♙c8 17.♙g7 ♙g8 18.♙f6 1-0.

Instead, 5...♙g7 is critical when White can choose between:





● 6.c3 ♖c6?! (once again an error – correct is 6...cxd4 7.cxd4 d6 and Black is doing fine) 7.d5! ♖cxe5? (7...♖a5!? 8.♖e2 isn't very nice for Black. Like it or not, the retrograde 7...♖b8 has to be tried) 8.♖xe5 ♖xe5 9.f4 ♖c7 10.♖a3 a6 11.♖e2 b5 12.fxe5 ♖xe5 13.0-0 ♖b7 14.♖e3 f5 15.♖d2 e6 16.♖f3 0-0-0 17.♖ad1 and White was winning, Bednarski-Moe, Copenhagen 1983.

● 6.♖c4 is more testing when Black has two interesting choices:

– 6...♖c6!? 7.♖g5 (7.♖xf7+ looks like a shot, but the position after 7...♗xf7 8.♖g5+ ♗g8 9.♖xg4 ♖xd4 is far from clear) 7...♖h6 8.dxc5 (8.c3 cxd4 9.cxd4 ♖b6) 8...♖xe5 is okay for Black.

– 6...0-0 7.h5. The plan of 6.♖c4 and 7.h5 has yet to be tested but it is the most direct approach. Here is one possible line: 7...d5 8.exd6 exd6 9.hxg6 hxg6 10.♖g5 ♖e8+ 11.♗f1 ♖b6 12.♖c3 cxd4 13.♖d5 ♖c5 14.♖b3 d3 15.♖h4 ♖e6 (15...♖e2 is flashy but untrustworthy, Black should just get his remaining pieces developed – 16.♖xd3 ♖xf2+ 17.♗e1 ♗f8 18.♖xf2 ♖xf2 19.♖e2 ♖xb2 20.♖xf2 ♖xa1 21.♖xc5 dxc5 22.♖c7 and White wins) 16.♖xd3 ♖c6 17.♖c7 ♖b4 18.♖xe6 ♖xd3 19.♖xc5 ♖xc5 20.c3 which, after all the complications, is about equal.

● 6.♖g5 h5 7.♖c4 0-0 8.c3 d5 9.♖e2 ♖c6 (this leads to big complications which are not necessarily bad for Black. Simpler was 9...f6

10.exf6 – 10.♖f3 fxe5; 10.♖h3?! cxd4 11.cxd4 fxe5 12.f3 ♖h6 13.dxe5 ♖f5 is huge for Black – 10...exf6 11.♖f3 cxd4 12.cxd4 – 12.♖xd4 ♖c6= – 12...♖c6 equal) 10.e6 f5 (10...fxe6 11.♖xg4 hxg4 might be worth checking out. It's not easy to determine which is more important – White's attack or Black's centre) 11.dxc5 d4 12.0-0 ♖d5 unclear, A.Horvath-Chatalbashev, Balatonlelle 2003. Note 5...d6 6.h5 cxd4 7.hxg6 fxe6 8.exd6 e5 9.♖c4 ♖xd6 10.♖g5 ♖c7 (10...♖e3!?) 11.♖e2 ♖c6 12.♖f7+ ♖d8 13.♖xg6 was tremendous for the first player in J.Whitehead-Radke, San Francisco 1979.

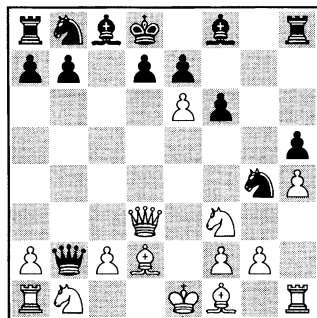
**6.♖xd4 h5 7.e6 f6 8.♖e4**

8.♖d3 ♖g8 is not very clear – Hansen and Nielsen. We will try to add to this: 9.exd7+ ♖xd7 10.♖d5 e6 11.♖xb7 ♖c6 12.0-0 (12.♖f4 e5 13.♖d2 ♖c5 14.0-0 ♖b8 15.♖a6 ♗f8 16.b3 ♗g7 gives Black reasonable compensation) 12...♖b8 13.♖a6 ♖b6 14.♖a4 (14.♖c4!?) 14...♖b4 15.♖a3 ♖b8 with excellent compensation.

**8...♖b6 9.♖xg6+ ♖d8 10.♖d2 ♖xb2**

10...d5 11.♖c3 ♖xf2+ 12.♖d1 ♖xe6 was another good possibility.

**11.♖d3**



**11...♖e5**

Can Black capture the rook and survive? We believe the answer is no. 11...♖xa1 12.♖b3 d6 13.c4! and there is no good answer to the threat of 14.♖c3.



11...♙g7!? is a possible improvement.

12.♖c3 ♜xf3+ 13.gxf3 ♜xc3 14.♜xc3 dxe6 15.0-0-0 ♜e8

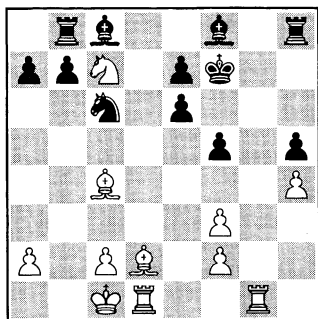
15...♜c6!? might be better.

16.♙d3

This is not an easy position for Black. White's development offers definite compensation for the pawn and probably more.

16...♜f7 17.♞hg1 f5 18.♜b5 ♜c6

19.♜c7 ♞b8 20.♙c4



20...b5!

Lie gives the pawn back in an attempt to get his pieces out. Clinging to the extra material was asking for trouble: 20...♜e5 21.♙b5 ♙h6 (21...♜xf3?? 22.♙e8+ ♜f6 23.♙c3+ e5 24.♞g6 mate) 22.♙xh6 ♞xh6 23.♞d8 with a big advantage for White.

21.♙xb5 ♞b7 22.♙xc6 ♞xc7 23.♙a4 ♙b7 24.♙e3 ♙h6 25.f4 ♞hc8 26.♞d2 ♙d5 27.♙b3 ♙xb3 28.axb3 a5 29.♜b1?

This looks like the wrong direction for the king. Safer was 29.♜d1, meeting 29...a4 with 30.bxa4.

29...a4 30.♞gd1 axb3

30...♞b8 31.♞d3 ♞c4 was another good possibility.

31.cxb3 ♞b8 32.♞d3 ♞c4 33.♜a2 ♞cb4 34.♙d2 ♞a8+ 35.♜b1 ♞b7 36.♞c1 ♙g7 37.♜c2 ♙f6 38.♞h3 ♞d7 39.♜d1 ♙d4

39...♞ad8 40.♞c2 ♞d3 41.♞xd3 ♞xd3 42.b4 ♙xh4 43.♞b2 ♙xf2 44.♜e2 ♙d4 45.♜xd3 ♙xb2 46.b5 ♜e8 looks similar to what could have occurred later in the game. Black looks to be winning.

40.♞f3 ♙f6 41.♞h3 ♞ad8 42.♞c2 ♞d3 43.♙xd3 ♞xd3 44.b4 ♙xh4 45.♞b2 ♙f6

Why not 45...♙xf2 46.♜e2 ♙d4 47.♜xd3 ♙xb2 48.b5 ♜e8 which looks like it should win.

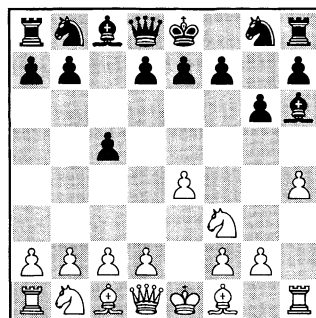
46.♞b1 ♞d5 47.♜e2 ♞b5 48.♜d3 ♞d5+ 49.♜e2 ♞b5 50.♜d3 ♜e8 51.♞h1 h4 52.♙c3 ♞d5+ 53.♜c4 ♜d7 54.♙xf6 exf6 55.♜c3 ♜d6 56.♞xh4 ♞d1 57.♞h8 ♞c1+ 58.♜d3 ♞d1+ 59.♜e3 ♞b1 1/2-1/2

#### IV Keene's suggestion

The outlandish 3.... ♙h6?!

1.e4 c5 2.♜f3 g6 3.h4 ♙h6

This is Keene's outlandish idea proposed more than 30 years ago but still untested. The ideas are to meet 4.h5 d6 5.hxg6 hxg6 6.♜c3?? with 6...♙xd2+ and to try to force some lack of coordination in the white forces. These are excellent thoughts but they don't seem to work against concrete play.



4.h5

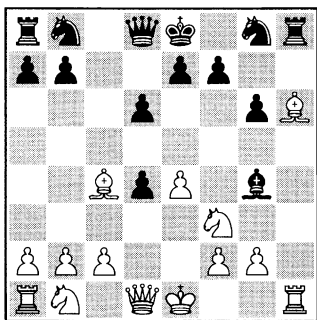


4.d4 ♖xc1 5.♗xc1 cxd4 6.♘xd4 ♘c6  
7.♞d2 ♘f6 8.♘c3 ♞b6?! 9.♘b3 a5 10.♘d5  
♘xd5 11.exd5 ♘e5 12.♞c3 ♞b4 13.♞xb4  
axb4 14.d6! with a big pull is one problem.  
**4...d6 5.♖c4**

Another strong continuation is 5.d4 ♖xc1  
6.♞xc1 gxf5 7.dxc5 ♞a5+ 8.♘c3 ♞xc5  
9.♘d5 ♖e6 10.b4 ♞c8 11.♖b5+ ♘d7 12.c4  
e6 13.♞b2 with a winning position.

5.hxg6 hxg6 6.♘c3?? ♘xd2+ seems to be  
the only real justification for 3...♖h6.

**5...♖g4 6.hxg6 hxg6 7.d4 cxd4** Inter-  
esting is 7...♘d2+ and 8...♞xh1 – Stefan  
Löffler. **8.♖xh6**



### 8...♘h6

8...♞a5+?! 9.c3 dxc3 (9...♞xh6 is better but  
after 10.♞xh6 ♘xh6 11.♞xd4 f6 12.♞e3  
♖xf3 13.gxf3 ♘f7 14.f4 White's position is  
still preferable) 10.♘xc3 ♞xh6 11.♞xh6  
♘xh6 12.♞d2 with a considerable advan-  
tage.

### 9.♞xd4 f6 10.♞d2 ♖xf3 11.gxf3 g5 12.♘c3

White is much better as Black's position is  
full of 'light' holes.

### Conclusion

The move 3.h4 is fully playable and has the  
virtues of being aggressive and little ana-  
lyzed. Of the seven plausible moves one  
might try in reply we believe that only  
3...♘f6, 3...h5 and 3...h6 really merit a closer  
examination. The fate of the latter is very  
much tied up with the assessment of the po-  
sition after 4.h5 g5 5.d4 ♖g7 6.dxc5. The  
choice between the other two moves is a  
question of taste. The more dynamic alterna-  
tive is 3...♘f6 and there in particular we  
draw your attention to 4.e5 ♘g4 5.d4 ♖g7  
which deserves more tests. Those who pre-  
fer more traditional approaches will have a  
preference for the solid 3...h5. In this line  
Black needs to be able to meet gambit ap-  
proaches where d4 ...cxd4 is met by c3 with  
...e6 and ...d5. In this case he should be able  
to obtain a playable game.

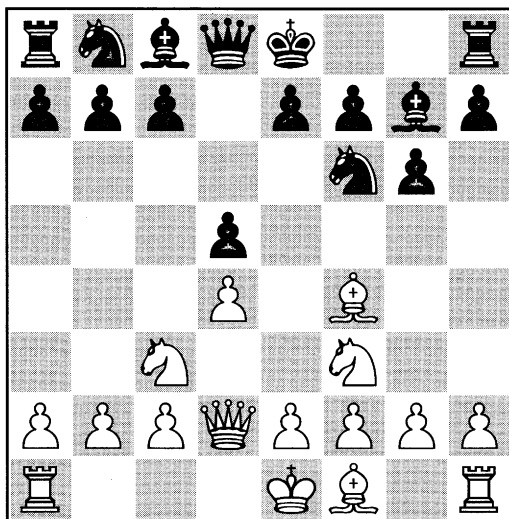
Those who like attacking play without  
having to know lots of theory will like 3.h4.  
It may also serve a useful place in the  
repertoire of players who routinely meet the  
Sicilian with 3.♖b5 or 3.♖b5+ and don't  
have the option of transposing into the  
Dragon or Accelerated Dragon.



# CHAPTER 6

## *Arthur Kogan*

### The Tarzan Attack



1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 g6 3.♘c3 d5 4.♙f4 ♙g7 5.♔d2

5.♔d2! starts the line I call the ‘Tarzan Attack’. Before we will delve into this, I should like to guide you towards the starting position, presenting you some attacking ideas for your repertoire along the way:

#### 1.d4 ♘f6

You can use similar attacking ideas as in our main line against a different move order, such as 1.d4 g6 2.♘c3!? and now:

– 2....♙g7 3.♙f4 d6 4.♔d2!. I tried this already in few rapid games with success, for example: 4...♘d7 5.0-0-0 (5.e4) 5...c5 5...e5 6.♙g5 f6 7.♙h4 or 7.♙e3!?) 6.♘f3 cxd4 7.♘xd4 with a nice Dragon type of position. Note that 7...e5? is wrong now due to 6.♙g5!.

– 2...♘f6 3.♙f4. Recently, I had a interesting game against a Rumanian WGM: 3...d6 (3...d5 4.♔d2!) 4.♔d2 ♘bd7 5.0-0-0 (5.♘f3 c5 6.e3) 5...c5 6.e3 (also interesting is 6.dxc5 ♘xc5 7.e4!) 6...♙g7 7.h4! a6 8.♙e2 h5 9.♘h3! ♚b8 (on 9...b5 my idea was 10.♙f3 ♚b8 11.♘g5) 10.♘g5 b5 Kogan-Bogza, Tarragona 2006. And now, maybe even stronger than the game continuation 11.♘b1 was 11.♘ce4! c4 12.♘xf6+ ♘xf6 13.e4 with possible e5, or f3 and g4 ideas – White looks better. The same goes for 11...♙b7 12.♘xf6+ ♙xf6 13.♚hg1.

#### 2.♘f3 g6 3.♘c3

This ‘SOS kind of move’ is less positional than the common 3.c4, but still it fights for

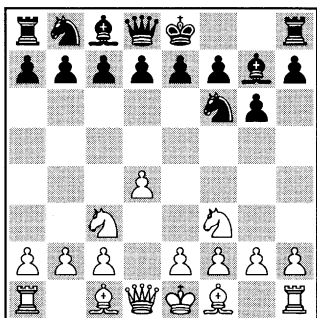


e4, so the only principal way for Black to prevent e4 is 3...d5!

### 3...d5

But just imagine how a KI player would feel now. Usually he moves this pawn to d6, but not every KI player is playing the Pirc!

If 3...♟g7:



● 4.♟f4 d6 5.♞d2 0-0 6.♞h6 c5 7.♟xg7 ♟xg7 8.0-0-0 (alternatives are 8.e4 and 8.dxc5) 8...cxd4 (8...♞a5 9.e4 a6 10.e5 dxe5 11.dxe5 ♞e8 12.h4! Crouch-Röllig, Berlin 1995) 9.♟xd4 ♞c6 10.e4!. So, we obtain an interesting Sicilian with a Dragon structure but without the dangerous dark-squared bishop on g7! Surely a good reason for White to be optimistic about his future attacking chances!

● By the way, I can't avoid to mention a nice quick win against a creative Dutch GM: 4.e4 d6 5.♞e3 (now it's one of main lines of the Pirc, but you will see that attacking ideas are similar to the 'Tarzan Attack'!) 5...0-0 6.♞d2 ♟g4 7.♞g5! a6 8.f3 ♟c8 9.h4 e6 10.h5! h6 (10...♞xh5 11.g4 – 11.♞xh7!? – 11...♞f6 – 11...♞g3 12.♞h2 – 12.0-0-0) 11.♞h3 g5 12.♞xg5! hxg5 13.h6 ♞h8 14.♟xg5 ♞d7 (14...♞e8 15.h7+ ♟f8 16.0-0-0+–) 15.♞f4! ♞h7 16.♞g3! f5 17.♞f6+ ♟f7 18.♟xh8 1-0 Kogan-Reinderman, Antwerp 1998.

### 4.♟f4

Now the bishop is ideally placed on f4 controlling e5 and preparing our main plan.

### 4...♟g7

Black can also try to delay ♟g7 with 4...c6

● Now I won a positional game after 5.e3 ♞b6 6.♞b1 ♟f5 7.♟d3 ♟xd3 8.cxd3 ♟g7 9.0-0 ♞bd7 10.h3 0-0 11.b4! (a minority attack! Yes we still need to know ideas from all openings after all...) 11...♞fc8 12.♞b3 ♞d8 13.♞fc1± Kogan-Hausner, Zlin 1995.

● 5.♞d2 b5?! (this move is preparing against White's long castle, but in fact creating serious weaknesses) 6.♞e5! (if Black plays on the flank, let's react in the centre!) 6...♞e6!? 7.f3! (I was waiting for...♟g7 before playing ♟h6, and f3 is a useful move to control the centre and help to build a possible future attack with g4!) 7...♟g7 8.♟h6 ♟xh6 9.♞xh6 ♞bd7 10.♞d3!± (the knight is well placed here, keeping c6 under control and preparing a future ♞f4) 10...♞b6 11.e3 ♟f5 12.♞e2 a6 13.0-0! (all Black's play was geared towards White castling queenside, so changing my plan was a really unpleasant surprise for my opponent) 13...c5 14.♞f4 e6 15.♞ad1! (now ♟f5 is in trouble) 15...♟xc2 16.♞d2 cxd4 17.exd4 g5 18.♞xg5 ♟g6 19.♞c1 ♞c8 20.♞dd1 ♞d8 21.♟f1 ♞g8 22.♞h6 ♞b8 23.♞h1 ♞d6 24.♞e1 ♟f5 25.♞ce2! ♟d8 26.g4 ♟xg4 27.fxg4 ♞xg4 28.♞h4+ ♞e7 29.♞g3 ♞gf6 30.♞c3 and White was winning in Kogan-Szekely, Merida 2002.

### 5.♞d2!

This move was played a couple of times by original players as Gurgenzidze in the seventies, and Vorotnikov in the eighties, but rarely in GM games. Somehow it was forgotten, especially after White lost in a game between Yusupov and Kasparov.

For a few years I used to play the 'tricky' 5.e3 line from time to time. This gave me good results, owing to my hidden intentions to attack. For, after ♞e2 and ♞e5, I would

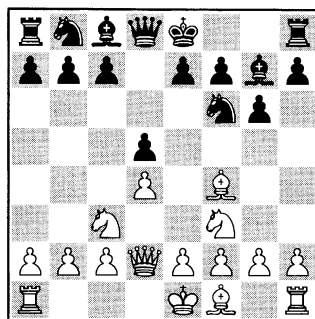


suddenly lash out with h4, or play ♖d2 followed by 0-0-0 and an attack on the kingside.

I can't avoid mentioning Kogan-Kobese, Almásora 2000, which went: 5.e3 0-0 6.♘e2 b6 7.♗e5 ♘b7 8.h4 ♗bd7 9.h5 a6 10.hxg6 hxg6 11.♘g4 ♗xe5 12.dxe5 ♗e4 13.♖f3 f5 14.exf6ep ♖xf6 15.♗xe4 dxe4 16.♖h3 ♖d5 17.♞d1 ♖b5 18.♘h6 1-0.

Indeed, the title of this chapter was suggested to me after this game by my likeable opponent, the ex African champion IM Watu Kobese. He started joking and called my way of playing 'Tarzan' style. This only proves that Watu is a rare example of a person who accepts losses in a sportive way! So that's why since that game I usually call any direct attack a 'primitive' or 'Tarzan style' one!

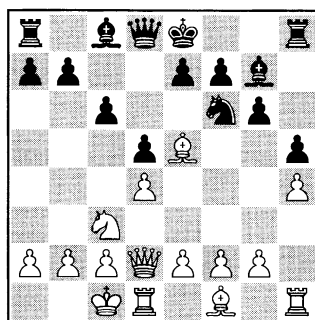
Meanwhile my opponents started to prepare for 5.e3, so it stopped to be a real surprise. So I was looking for another way to surprise my opponents, especially the guys who usually play the King's Indian or the Grünfeld (choosing these lines is normally a sign that they must have a good memory and have prepared long theoretical lines in advance). The story of this line started in the summer of 2000, during a nice sunny vacation in Cannes, when I decided to check 5.♖d2. I knew the Yusupov-Kasparov encounter, but I couldn't believe that this idea could be so bad since ♖d2 followed by ♘h6 was such a natural idea – especially for an attacking player like me (at least in my young days). After a few hours of analysis I understood that the whole line is much better than its reputation and with a few new ideas in mind I started to play it with success. Now I am ready to share with you some of my secret analysis. In this article I will help you to understand the main ideas of White's strategy, and I hope to inspire you to adopt this 'SOS killer'!



Section I: 5...c6  
 Section II: 5...0-0  
 Section III: 5...♗e4

### Section I

GM Cvitan, a big KI expert, once tried **5...c6** but didn't manage to survive White's attack after **6.♗e5** The young Leko once faced a disaster after 6.♘h6 ♘hxh6 7.♖hxh6 e6?! 8.e4 dxe4 9.♗g5 ♖e7 10.♗gxe4 ♗bd7 11.♘d3 b6 12.a4 a5 13.0-0 ♘b7 14.♞fel±, A.Herzog-Leko, Austrian Staatsliga 1991. **6...♗bd7 7.h4 ♗xe5 8.♘xe5 h5 9.0-0-0**



and White, who was much lower rated, managed to get the better position and to crush a respectable GM:

**9...b5 10.f3 ♖a5 11.a3 ♘h6**  
 The point was 11...b4? 12.♗a2±.  
**12.e3 0-0 13.♘b1 ♖b6 14.g4!**

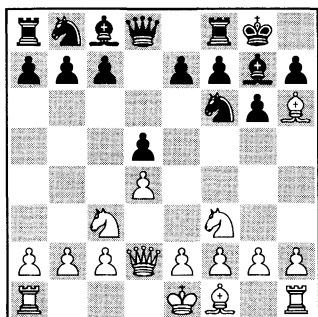


An important pawn break, confirming that any player to play this line must be ready to sac at least one pawn for the attack!

**14...hxg4 15.h5 g5 16.f4 b4 17.axb4 ♖xb4** Here it is important to mention that ♕e5 not only supports the attack, but also helps in the defence against ...♙b8 ideas! **18.fxg5 ♕xg5 19.h6 ♕f5 20.♕d3 ♕h7 21.♙d9** Now it is clear that White's attack is first! **21...a5 22.♕xh7+ ♖xh7 23.♖d3! ♖c4 24.♖f5** and Black is totally lost, so he resigned! Rakic-Cvitan, Yugoslav Championship, Kladovo 1991.

## Section II

**5...0-0 6.♕h6**



## Variation A

A very tricky order was used by the famous GM Azmai after **6...♕xh6 7.♖xh6 c5!?** White won in Vorotnikov-Iskushnikh, Moscow 1996, after **7...c6 8.♕g5 ♙e8 9.e4 ♖bd7 10.e5 ♖f8 11.♕e2 ♖d6 12.e6 fxe6 13.h4 ♖b6 14.0-0-0 ♖c7 15.g3 e5 16.h5 ♖d6 17.♖ce4 dxe4 18.♕c4+ e6 19.hxg6 ♙e7 20.gxh7+ ♖h8 21.♖h5 ♖f6 22.♖f7+ ♙xf7 23.♖xf7 ♖d8 24.♕xe6 1-0.**

**8.0-0-0?**

**8.dxc5! ♖a5 9.0-0-0 ♖xc5? (9...♕e6 10.e4! dxe4 11.♕g5) 10.♙xd5!! ♖xd5 11.♕g5 ♖f6 12.♖ce4!** was my secret preparation! Now you know it too!

**8...♕g4 9.♖h4 e5!**

This is the point! An incredible trap that is easy to miss.

**10.♖xd8 ♙xd8 11.dxe5 ♕e6 12.♖e4? ♖d7**

**0-1**

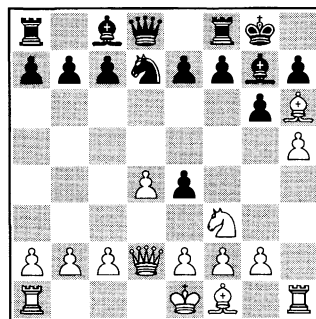
Gurgenidze-Azmaiparashvili, Tbilisi 1986.

## Variation B

**6...♖bd7!? 7.h4!**

Direct attack! No reason to be shy on the board. Less active looks **7.♕xg7 ♖xg7 8.♖e5 c6 9.f4 ♖c7 10.e3 ♖e8 11.♕d3 f6 12.♖xd7 ♕xd7 13.e4 e5 14.dxe5 fxe5** with equal chances. Vorotnikov-Heinig, Leipzig 1982.

**7...♖e4 8.♖xe4 dxe4 9.h5**



Played à la Tarzan! This is the principled way to continue the attack!

**9...exf3 10.hxg6 fxg6**

**10...hxg6 11.♕xg7 ♖xg7 12.♖h6+ ♖f6 13.0-0-0!** (this was my main idea, the compensation for the piece looks more than enough! The black king seems to be in trouble. For example: **13.e4 e5 13...fxe2 (13...e6 14.exf3 or 14.gxf3 – it's at least a draw with 14.♖h4+ ♖g7 15.♖h7+) 14.♕xe2 e6 15.d5 e5 16.d6!±.**

**11.♕xg7 ♙f7 12.♕h6 fxe2 13.♕xe2 ♖f6 14.♕c4!**

and in Kogan-Hebert, Salou 2001, I won in few more moves against the solid Canadian IM. The surprise worked very well!

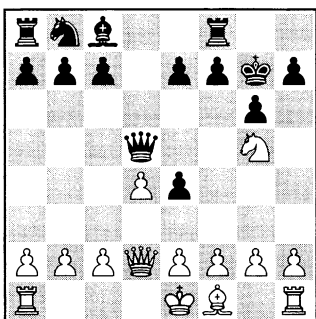


**Variation C**

**6...♘e4!? 7.♙xe4 dxe4 8.♙xg7 ♖xg7 9.♙g5**

It seems that White can also fight for the advantage with 9.♙e5 c5 10.e3 ♖c7 and now the improvement 11.♖c3 (11.0-0-0 is risky since Black is the first to start an action on the queenside. 11...♞d8 gave Black good counterplay in Kogan-Zapata, Havana 2002) 11...f6 12.♙c4 cxd4 13.exd4± (rather than 13.♖xd4 ♙f5 14.♙e2 ♙c6).

**9...♖d5**

**10.c4!**

This is stronger than 10.h4 h6 11.♙h3 (11.c4 e3 12.♖c3 exf2+ 13.♙xf2 ♖f5+ 14.♙f3 ♙d7 15.e4 ♖xe4 16.♞e1 ♙f6 17.♙d3 ♖f4± Lüders-Schrüfer, Germany Bundesliga 1983) 11...e5 12.e3 ♞d8 13.c4 ♖d6 14.0-0-0 ♙c6 15.d5 ♙e7 16.f3 exf3 17.gxf3 b5 Alexandria-Chiburdanidze, Tbilisi 1977 m-8.

**10...♖xc4 10...♖f5 11.f3! exf3 12.gxf3** looks nice for White. **11.♙xe4** as in Prié-Bernard, Cap d'Agde 2006.

So, 10.c4 is an important improvement which gives White a better position.

**Variation D**

**6...b6?! 7.♙xg7**

An improvement might be 7.h4! or 7.♙e5!?

**7...♙xg7 8.0-0-0 ♙b7 9.h4 h5 10.♙g5 10.♙e5! ♙bd7 11.♖f4** looks like a better plan to me. **10...♙bd7 11.f4 e6 12.e3**

**c5** And Black had counterplay in Rakic-Janosevic, Belgrade 1968.

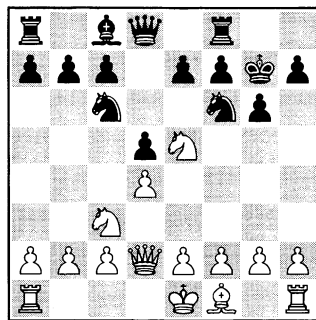
**Variation E**

**6...c5 7.♙xg7 ♖xg7 8.dxc5 ♙c6 9.♞d1** White had a slight edge in Gurgendize-Geller, Moscow 1979, after 9.e3 ♙g4 10.♙d4 e5 11.♙xc6 bxc6 12.f3 ♙e6 13.♙a4 ♖c7 14.♙a6 ♞ad8 15.b3 d4 16.e4 ♖e7 17.0-0-0. **9...e6 10.e4 dxe4 11.♙g5 ♖xd2+ 12.♞xd2 ♙d7 13.♙b5 h6 14.♙gxe4 f5 15.♙d6 ♙xc5 16.0-0 e5 17.♞d5** With a distinct edge for White. Rakic-Petursson, Ljubljana 1981.

**Variation F**

**6...♙c6!? 7.♙xg7 ♖xg7 8.♙e5!?**

Also logical is 8.0-0-0 ♙e4 (8...♙f5 9.♙h4!) 9.♙xe4 dxe4 10.d5! exf3 11.dxc6 ♖xd2+ 12.♞xd2 with a better endgame for White.

**Variation F1**

**8...♖d6**

This natural move seems to equalize, but I still manage to keep some pressure.

**9.f4!**

This gains space.

**9...♙f5 10.e3 ♙e4 11.♙xe4 ♙xe4 12.♙d3**

White is only slightly better, but in Kogan-Santos, Lisbon 2001, I managed to convert this into a win after



## 12...♟xe5

Here Black could have kept his disadvantage at a minimum with 12...f6! 13.♟xc6 ♖xc6 14.♟xe4 dxe4 15.0-0.

**13.fxex5 ♖b6 14.♟xe4! ♖xb2 15.0-0 dxe4 16.♚f1 ♖a3 17.♚xb7 ♚ab8 18.♚b3! ♚xb3 19.cxb3 c5 20.d5**

Now White's positional edge is evident.

**20...♚d8 21.♚d1 ♖a6 22.♖c2 ♖a5 23.h3 ♖b4 24.♖f2 ♖c3 25.♖f4 ♖c2 26.♚f1 ♚f8 27.d6 e6 28.♟h1**

No reason to hurry. The d-pawn is too strong, so no need to protect pawns!

**28...♖xa2 29.♖f6+ ♟g8 30.d7 ♖a5 31.♖e7!**

Now Black is almost in zugzwang!

**31...h5**

31...♚d8 doesn't help: 32.♚xf7! wins.

**32.h4 a6 33.♚xf7! ♖a1+ 34.♟h2 ♖xe5+ 35.♟h3 1-0**

### Variation F2

One of the world strongest chess players played **8...♟f5!?** against me. I continued with the dubious move **9.e3?!** The only excuse is that it was the last round of a rapid chess tournament and I had one point more than Vishy(!), so even though I played for win, I didn't want to risk too much – a typical mistake! Otherwise I would surely have played the more natural 9.f3! ♖d6 10.g4 with a nice initiative. **9...♖d6** I lost after **10.♟b5?** White could have kept equal chances with 10.f4 or 10.♟xc6 bxc6 11.♟d3. **10...♖b4!** A nice trap! Now, Black has the initiative! **11.c3 ♖a5 12.♟d3 ♟e4** Kogan-Anand, Venaco 2005.

### Variation F3

**8...♟xe5 9.dxe5 ♟e4 10.♟xe4 dxe4 11.♖c3 c6 12.e3**

Not 12.g3?! ♖b6 13.♚d1 ♟f5 14.♟g2 ♚fd8 and Black was slightly better in Bosboom

Lanchava-I'Ami, Wijk aan Zee 2005.

**12...♟e6 13.♟e2 ♖b6 14.0-0-0!**

14.0-0 ♚fd8 15.♚ad1 ♚d5! was equal, Messing-Vukic, Novi Travnik 1969.

**14...♚ad8 15.h4**

This seems slightly better for White.

## Section III

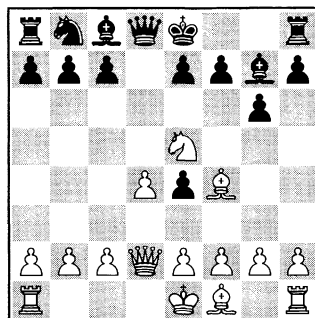
### 5...♟e4

Theory considers this as the main move following the examples of Kasparov and Sutovsky. However, please note that Black is exchanging White's badly-placed knight, and is doubling his e-pawn, so White has some positional advantages from now on. Black must try to compensate for them with active play, keeping control of the key-square (and pawn) e4.

### 6.♟xe4

Lajos Portisch tried the original 6.♖e3! and even got the better position after 6...♟xc3 (6...0-0 might be a try to improve: 7.0-0-0 – 7.♟xe4 dxe4 8.♖xe4 ♟c6! – 7...♟c6! 7.8.♟xe4 dxe4 9.♖xe4 ♟f5 10.♖e3 ♟b4 11.♖b3! a5! where Black has a strong initiative for a small pawn. But there is still a lot of room for improvements) 7.♖xc3 ♟c6 8.0-0-0 ♟g4 9.♟e5 ♟xe5 10.♟xe5 ♟xe5 11.dxe5 ♟e6 12.e4!, Portisch-Jimenez Zerquera, Varna Olympiad 1962.

### 6...dxe4 7.♟e5





### Variation A

#### 7...c5

A good game was played by one of my talented chess students IM Thal Abergel after the too original 7...b5?!: 8.e3 a6 9.♖c3! 0-0 10.♟c6 ♟xc6 11.♖xc6 ♙e6 12.♙e2 ♙d5 13.♖c5 ♖d7 14.b3 ♜fc8 15.c4 ♙c6 16.0-0 e6 17.♜fd1 ♙f8 18.♖g5± Abergel-Spielmann, France 2004.

Another talented player I trained is WGM Tea Bosboom Lanchava. She also used my surprise weapon with success.

#### 8.e3 0-0 9.c3

Also possible is 9.0-0-0 but Tea wanted to keep the possibility of 0-0, depending on Black's plan.

#### 9...cxd4?!

9...♙e6 looks better.

**10.cxd4 b6 11.♙c4 ♙b7 12.0-0 ♟d7 13.♟g4 ♜c8 14.♖e2 ♟h8 15.♜fd1 f6 16.h4 f5 17.♟e5 ♟xe5 18.dxe5 ♖e8 19.e6 ♜c5 20.♜d7**

With a clear edge in Bosboom Lanchava-Zaksaitė, Gothenburg 2005.

### Variation B

#### 7...♟d7

This was Sutovsky's choice, and it is a logical move that I faced a few times.

#### 8.♟xd7!

After some experience I believe that this is the safest way for an advantage.

● But you can also check 8.♙h6. This move was considered the main one until a talented Norwegian player found a refutation at the board. 8...♙xh6! (less accurate, but played by Sutovsky, was 8...0-0. After the logical improvement 9.♙xg7 – Finkel-Sutovsky, Rishon-le-Zion 1995, went 9.♟xd7 ♖xd7 10.0-0-0?! ♖d5 11.♙xg7 ♟xg7 12.♟b1 ♙e6 13.b3 a5, and Black's dangerous attack brought him the win in a few moves – 9...♟xg7 10.♟xd7! ♖xd7 11.e3 White can

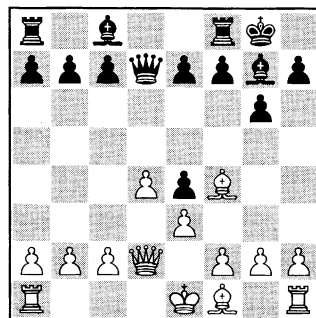
get a nice edge thanks to a better pawn structure and a safer king! Kogan-Blot, France 2002/03) 9.♖xh6 ♟xe5 10.♖g7! (10.dxe5? ♖d5 is better for Black) 10...♜f8 11.♖xe5 ♖d6! and suddenly White can't take on e4 because of ♖b4 check, but otherwise the endgame is only about equal. Kogan-Trygstad, Oslo 2002.

● It seems that Black has enough counterplay after 8.0-0-0 0-0 (8...♟xe5 9.♙xe5 ♙xe5 10.dxe5 ♖xd2+ 11.♟xd2!± – but not 11.♜xd2 e3!) 9.♖e3!? ♟f6 10.c4 c5! 11.dxc5 ♖a5 12.♟b1 ♟h5! 13.g3 g5!.

#### 8...♖xd7 9.e3 0-0

An interesting line is 9...c5 10.dxc5! ♖xd2+ 11.♟xd2 ♙xb2 – 11...♙g4 12.c3± – 12.♙b5+! ♟d8? – 12...♟f8 13.♜ab1 ♙g7 14.c6! – 13.c6! threatening mate in one, and this gives White a clear edge.

And here I had prepared an improvement I could use against the Grünfeld expert Krasenkow, but unfortunately after getting the better position I went wrong later on and even lost. Anyway, it was not because of the opening(!):



#### 10.♖c3!

With this strange move White activates his queen, prevents counterplay with ...c5 for some time, and attacks c7. So White wins time to finish his development and owing to his better pawn structure gets a nice edge.



– 10.♖d1 b6?! (10...c5! 11.c3 ♗d5! was what I was worried about) 11.♙e2 ♙b7 12.0-0 ♖ad8 13.♗b4 was a game that proved White's edge in this pawn structure Salguero-Caputo, San Rafael 1992.

– 10.0-0-0?! ♗a4 11.♙b1 c5! was Black's idea.

**10...c6 11.♙e2** Also interesting seems 11.0-0-0, or even 'à la Tarzan' 11.h4!?

**11...b6 12.♗b3?!** There where more attractive ways for White, make your own choice: 12.♙e5!?±; 12.0-0-0 c5 13.h4 or 13.♙e5±; 12.a4!? c5 13.♙e5!; or even 12.♗a3!?. **12...♗f5!** If 12...♙b7 then 13.c3. **13.c3** 13.0-0-0 ♙e6 14.c4 b5! and Black has counterplay. **13...c5** Kogan-Krasenkow, Sanxenxo 2003, and thanks to the threat of taking twice on d4, Black gains the time to create serious counterplay.

### Variation C

#### 7...♙e6!?

By developing his bishop Black threatens ...f6 trapping the knight in the centre!

#### 8.e3

Never tried but deserving of serious attention is 8.0-0-0!? f6 (8...c6 9.e3) 9.d5!.

#### 8...♙d7

8...0-0 9.c3!? (also interesting was 9.0-0-0, for example 9...♙d7 10.d5!?) 9...f6 10.♙c4 ♙d5 (10...♙d7 11.♙e2) 11.♙a5! b6 12.c4! ♙f7 13.♙b3 f5 14.g4! (14.h4! was maybe better) 14...fxg4 15.♗c2 ♙d7 16.♗xe4? (16.0-0-0!±) 16...e5! gave Black strong counterplay in the game Kogan-Damljanovic, Zaragoza 2003.

#### 9.♙c4

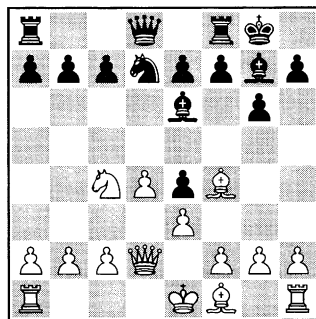
Too risky is 9.♗b4!? c5 10.♗xb7 ♙xe5 11.♙xe5 ♙xe5 12.dxe5 0-0 13.♗xe4 ♖b8! with nice compensation. White develops too slowly.

Another one of my ideas to improve on White's play was 9.♙xd7 ♗xd7 10.♗b4! when White's ideas consist of preventing ...c5, attacking b7, and keeping a better pawn structure. A logical plan would be ♙e2, 0-0 and c4.

#### 9...0-0

This was played by Kasparov, and although he 'only' got equal chances he managed to outplay his solid opponent and win to influence the history and the bad reputation of this line, at least till now!

On 9...♙b6 10.♙a5! ♖b8 11.c4! looks better for White. Here I also thought about another secret improvement...



#### 10.d5!?

The famous Kasparov game went 10.♙e2 ♙xc4 11.♙xc4 e5 12.dxe5 ♙xe5 when Black had solved all opening problems and went on to win: 13.♙b3 a5! 14.a4 ♙d7!? 15.0-0-0 ♙c5, Jussupow-Kasparov, Belfort 1988.

#### 10...♙f5 11.0-0-0 ♙b6 12.h3!

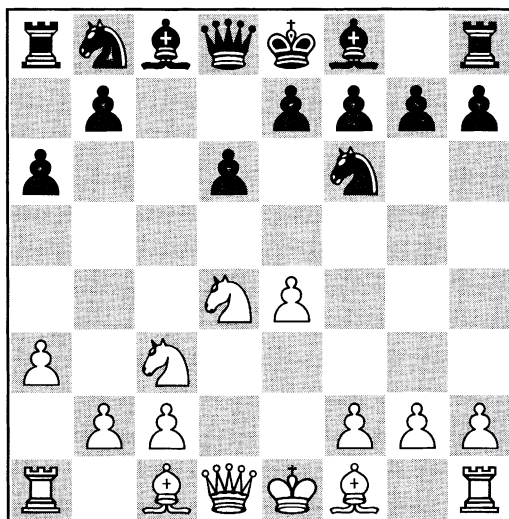
With the idea of g4, or even 12.f3!? and pressing e4. This was one of my ideas to improve for White, but I can't show you all my secret cards yet, right? Anyway it made me to feel that the line is playable after all, what about you?



## CHAPTER 7

*Jeroen Bosch*

# Making Short Work of the Najdorf



### 6.a3 – cheekily echoing 5...a6

The 1.e4-player's greatest challenge remains the Sicilian, and within the Sicilian labyrinth the Najdorf still heads the charts. Preparation is essential in Fischer's, Kasparov's and Topalov's favourite opening, but the task facing White in the Najdorf is nothing short of tremendous. And, even when you have managed to learn all necessary lines by heart (and have kept up with the latest developments as well) there is little chance of an opening advantage. In SOS-5 I have advocated 6.♞f3!?. This early queen move is a good surprise weapon, but against the Najdorf it makes sense to have something else up your sleeve as well.

My suggestion this time is 6.a3, cheekily

echoing 5...a6. However, there is more to 6.a3 than a provocative copying of Black's previous move. First of all the little pawn move has been played by Nigel Short, and by Najdorf-expert Semen Dvoiris. Secondly, if you think about it, why is 5...a6 such a great move? It does not develop a piece, nor does it, at first sight, increase the second player's influence in the centre. Now, 5...a6 is a useful move because it covers the b5-square. Thereby Black prepares to play in the centre with ...e5 (the immediate 5...e5 is well-met by 6.♗b5+), and he also prepares typical Sicilian queenside play with ...b5 and ...♞c7. White's 6.a3 is equally prophylactic in nature. White covers the b4-square (but usu-



ally does not intend to play b4!) thus preventing a future ...b5-b4. Most importantly, White allows Black to play his Najdorf move 6...e5 aiming to prove that the d5-square is weak by playing the bishop moves ♗f1-c4 and ♗c1-g5 in one go (compare this to 6.♗e2 e5 and 6.♗e3 e5). In this way 6.a3 could turn out to be an useful extra move in a familiar position.

Clearly, 6.a3 should not be compared to Fischer's 6.h3 but to 6.a4 which is a credible sub-variation against the Najdorf. Our present subject is modest, but leaves no weaknesses, while 6.a4 gains more space but the b4-square may become a problem. Enough words for now, the proof of the pudding is in the eating!

□ Semen Dvoiris  
 ■ Alexander Vaulin  
 St Petersburg 1999

1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4  
 ♗f6 5.♗c3 a6 6.a3 e5

Accepting the challenge and Black's most popular answer in (the limited) practice. Another Dvoiris outing saw Black continuing with: 6...b5 (ambitious, because if White now continues with 7.♗g5, 7.♗e3, 7.♗e2, 7.f4 or 7.g3 than Black's sixth move may well turn out to be more useful than White's. Dvoiris finds the weak spot in Black's strategy though) 7.♗d3 e5 (7...e6) 8.♗de2 (intending ♗g3 when Black must keep her light-squared bishop on the c8-h3 diagonal which is slightly inconsistent with 6...b5) 8...♗bd7 9.♗g3 ♗b6 (to cover both f5 and d5) 10.0-0 ♗e7 11.f4! 0-0 12.♖h1 ♗e6 13.fxe5 dxe5 14.♗f5

White has a pleasant edge, and we could end the game fragment here were it not for Dvoiris's 17th move which demonstrates how flexible the mind of a grandmaster is.

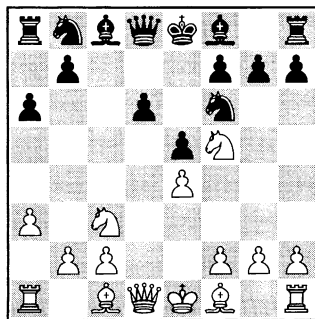
14...♗xf5 15.♗xf5 ♖d6 16.♖f1 ♗ac8 17.a4! b4 18.♗d1 a5 19.b3 (White has gained control over the c4 and b5-squares) 19...♗fd7 20.♗b2 g6 21.♗f3 ♗c5 22.♗f2 ♗e6 23.♗g4 and White had play in the centre, on the kingside, and on the queenside in Dvoiris-E.Pähtz, Cappelle la Grande 2001.

## 7.♗f3

The most natural move. Ideally White will continue with ♗g5 (xf6), ♗c4, and ♗d2-f1-e3 when all his minor pieces cooperate in controlling d5. That does not mean to say that there are no alternatives for the text. White can also play:

- 7.♗de2 when Aleksic-Isonzo, Catania 1999, continued 7...b5?! (7...♗e6) 8.♗g5 ♗bd7 9.♗d5 ♗e7 10.♗ec3 (10.♗xe7! ♖xe7 11.♗c3 or 11.♗g3) 10...♗b7 (10...♗xd5! 11.♖xd5 ♗b6) 11.♗xf6 ♗xf6 12.a4!? with a very slight edge.

- Aggressive, and worthy of further analysis, is 7.♗f5!?



Now the lines fork:

- 7...♗e6?! 8.♗g5 ♖b6 and now instead of 9.b4 (Nisiotis-Katsimihas, Glifada 1999) White has the simple 9.♗xf6 gxf6 (9...♗xf5 10.♗d5) 10.♗e3 with a positional advantage in this Sveshnikov type of structure. Note that 10...♖xb2? is wrong because of 11.♗ed5.
- 7...♗xe4?! sharp, but insufficient 8.♗xg7+

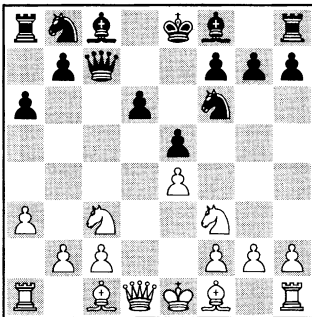


♙xg7 9.♘xe4 d5 (9...0-0!?) 10.♙g5! ♖a5+ (10...f6 11.♖h5+ ♜f8 12.♙e3) 11.b4 ♗c7 12.♗xd5 and Black does not have enough for his pawn.

– 7...♙xf5 8.exf5 d5 (8...h6 9.♙c4) 9.♙g5 with interesting play. Here it is important that Black cannot play ...♙b4.

– Best is 7...d5 8.♙g5 (8.♖f3) 8...d4 (this is more accurate than 8...♙xf5 9.♙xf6! – 9.exf5 d4 – 9...gxf6 10.exf5 d4 11.♘e4 when the knight is well-placed on e4, compare below) 9.♙xf6 gxf6! (9...♗xf6 10.♘d5 ♗c6 and now 11.♖f3 or 11.♗g4) 10.♘e2 ♘c6 (10...♙xf5 11.exf5 and Black is OK) 11.♘eg3 ♘e7! 12.♘xe7 ♙xe7 13.♙e2 ♖a5+ 14.b4 ♗c7 15.0-0 ♖g8 with about equal chances in a complex position, Ramesh-Arun Prasad, Hyderabad 2006.

**7...♖c7**



This is more than just a characteristic Sicilian move. Black prevents ♙c4, and already steps out of a future pin with ♙g5.

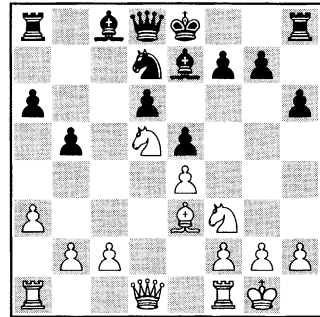
Black can also prevent the other bishop move with 7...h6 8.♙c4 and now:

– 8...♖c7 9.♙b3 ♙e6 10.0-0 ♘bd7 11.♘h4! by analogy to the great game Balashov-Sunye, Wijk aan Zee 1982, which started with 6.a4.

– 8...♙e6 is met by 9.♙xe6 fxe6 10.0-0 ♙e7 11.♘h4! all such lines can be compared to the existing theory on 6.a4. White is better

after both 11...♜f7 12.f4 exf4 13.♙xf4 g5?! 14.e5! and 11...0-0 12.♘g6 ♖f7 13.f4 exf4 14.♙xf4.

– 8...♙e7 9.♙e3 (this is perhaps not the strongest option – 9.0-0 0-0 10.♘h4!?) 9...♘bd7 10.0-0 b5 11.♙d5 ♘xd5 12.♘xd5



(play is about equal) 12...♙b7 13.c3 0-0 14.a4!? ♘f6 15.♙b6 ♖d7 and now White started a combination which changed the character of the position but not its evaluation. 16.♘xe5!? ♖e6 (16...dxe5?? 17.♘xf6+) 17.♘xe7+ ♖xe7 18.♘f3 ♘xe4 with equal chances, Djurasevic-Milic, Belgrade 1954.

Note that 7...♙e7 should be met with 8.♙g5 ♙e6 9.♙xf6 ♙xf6 10.♘d5 ♘d7 11.♙c4 rather than with 8.♙c4 ♙e6 9.♙xe6 fxe6 10.0-0 0-0 11.♘g5 ♖d7.

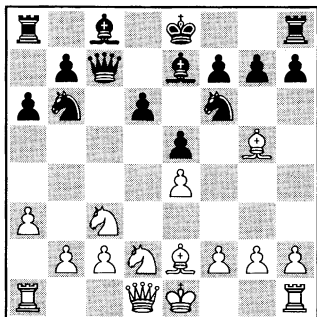
**8.♙d3**

This is not the most natural move, but Dvoiris has his own interpretation of such positions. Not wishing to exchange his c1-bishop he prepares ♘d2-f1-e3. Clearly, 8.♙g5 is worthy of our attention too. Let us investigate 8.♙g5 ♘bd7 (not 8...♙e7 9.♙xf6 ♙xf6 10.♘d5 ♖d8 11.♙c4). Now, in the ‘main’ line of 6.a4 White always plays 9.♘d2 – planning ♙c4 – and this is interesting here too. In the limited practice of 6.a3 only 9.♙e2 and 9.♙d3 have been tested:

– 9.♙e2 ♙e7 10.♘d2 ♘b6 (probably not



the best move, but Gligoric may be forgiven for overlooking White's next. If 10...b5, then 11.♖f1 ♖b7 12.♗e3!, perhaps simply 10...h6!?)



11.a4! (well done! After 6.a3, Djurasevic shows no inhibitions about pushing the a-pawn only five moves later. White gains a marked space advantage on the queenside with tempo) 11...♗e6 12.a5 ♘bd7 (12...♗c4?! 13.♗xc4 ♗xc4 14.♗xc4 ♖xc4 15.♖a4 ♖c6 16.♗xf6 ♗xf6 17.0-0 gives White a tremendous position – good knight versus bad bishop, a weak d5-square and space on the queenside) 13.♗f1 0-0 (13...♗c5 14.♗xf6 ♗xf6 15.♗e3) 14.♗e3 b5?! 15.axb6 ♖xb6 16.♖b1 ♖fb8 17.0-0 and White eventually converted his positional edge in Djurasevic-Gligoric, Belgrade 1954.

– 9.♗d3 ♗e7 (a complex position arises after 9...h6 10.♗h4 g5!? 11.♗g3 ♗e7) 10.♗d2 h6 11.♗h4 (there is something to be said for 11.♗xf6 ♗xf6 12.♗c4 ♗e6 13.♗e3) 11...b5 12.♗f1 ♗b6 13.♗e3 ♗e6 14.♖f3 (14.0-0) 14...0-0 15.♗f5 ♗xf5 16.♖xf5 g6 17.♖f3 ♗g7 18.♗g3 ♗h5 19.0-0.

The position is about equal, but Black slowly started to turn things in his favour with: 19...d5!? 20.♖fe1 (20.♗xd5 ♗xd5 21.exd5 f5; 20.exd5 f5) 20...♗xg3 21.♖xg3 dxe4 22.♗xe4 ♖ad8 23.♗d3 (23.a4!)

23...♗d6 24.♗e4 ♖fe8 25.h4 h5 26.♖ad1 ♗f8 27.♗e2 ♗e7! 28.♗g5 ♖xd1 29.♗xd1 ♗xg5! 30.♖xg5 ♖d8 31.♖g3 ♖d2 32.♖e3 ♖xe3 33.♖xe3 ♗c4 34.♖b3 ♖c8 and Black won this favourable ending. A.Zhigalko-Kuzubov, Groningen 2004.

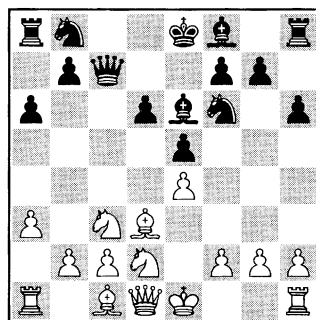
By the way, this game was played 8 days after Andrey Zhigalko (a Najdorf player himself) had suffered a crushing defeat at the hands of Nigel Short – see the next game. So, obviously impressed he decided it to try it out and found himself again at the receiving end. Despite the result in this game it is clear that 8.♗g5 is a serious alternative for Dvoiris's 8...♗d3.

### 8...h6

Now that White has refrained from 8.♗g5, Vaulin decides to prevent this move once and for all. Of course Black can also go for moves like 8...♗e7, 8...♗e6, or 8...♗b7 when it would be interesting to know whether Dvoiris would have gone for 9.♗g5, or would have stuck to his plan in the game with 9.♗d2.

### 9.♗d2 ♗e6

Preventing 10.♗c4, but this has little consequence since White might just as well go to f1.



### 10.♗f1 g6?!

I don't like this fianchetto, but maybe White is somewhat better in all cases. The freeing

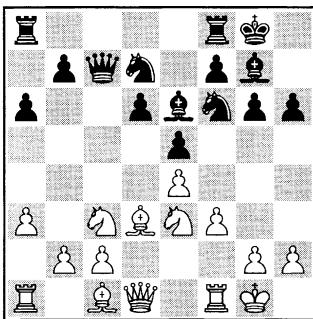


advance 10...d5 gives White a slight edge after 11.exd5 ♖xd5 12.♗xd5 ♗xd5 13.♗e3 followed by castling after either 13...♗e6 or 13...♗c6. Likewise, 10...♗e7 11.♗e3 ♖bd7 12.0-0 0-0 13.♗ed5!? (13.♖f3) 13...♗xd5 (13...♗xd5?? 14.exd5+-) 14.exd5 appears to be better for White. In this last line White should not play 14.♗xd5 ♖xd5 15.exd5 f5 though.

### 11.♗e3 ♗g7 12.0-0 ♖bd7

Black's position looks fairly harmonious, but it is difficult to improve his position. In the coming middlegame Dvoiris is happy to prevent his opponent from freeing himself (...d6-d5) and slowly outmanoeuvres him. Note that compared to the positions after 8.♗g5 when often a pair of minor pieces will be exchanged, here all minor pieces remain on the board for some time. White's bishop may look passive on c1, but in principle this is a good piece and his future will come (think of the closed Ruy Lopez). Black on the other hand is stuck with a fianchetto-bishop that is inhibited by his own structure, although, admittedly, this means that f4 is never a plan for White since it would free the 'monster' on g7.

### 13.f3 0-0



Understandably Black refrains from 13...b5 as 14.a4 b4 15.♗cd5 ♗xd5 16.exd5 fixes some light-squared weaknesses in his camp.

Still, the position would have remained complex, and in the game Black drifts into passivity.

### 14.a4!

Again we see that after playing 6.a3 White is not obliged to leave the pawn there for the rest of the game.

### 14...♖ac8 15.♖f2

Slowly regrouping his pieces with ♗f1 and ♖d2.

### 15...♖fd8 16.♗f1 ♖c5

Black's position is not all that much worse, but it is difficult for a human being to play such positions without any prospects of active counterplay. One of the problems is that ...f5 will never be on the cards since moving the f6-knight means relinquishing the already weak control of d5 (♗d5 would immediately follow).

Instead of the text, 16...♖a5 was a better move. Obviously, White cannot take on d6 (17.♖xd6?? ♗c5 18.♖xe5 ♗h5). Meanwhile, a5 is mechanically prevented, and an exchange sacrifice is threatened. In case of 17.♖e1 Black has 17...d5. After 17.♖a3 ♗b6?! 18.♗d2 ♖c5 19.a5 ♖bd7 Black has gained nothing, but stronger is 17...♗f8! when active possibilities are in sight.

### 17.a5 ♗h7 18.♖e1 ♖a7

Black cannot free himself with 18...d5 as the resulting position after the forced 19.♗exd5 ♗xd5 (19...♗xd5 20.♗e3 ♖c6 21.♗xd5 is identical) 20.exd5 ♗xd5 21.♗e3 ♖c6 22.♗xd5 ♖xd5 23.♖d2 is clearly advantageous for White. The immediate 18...h5 makes sense though.

### 19.♗h1 h5 20.♖d2 ♖c5 21.♖d1 ♖c6 22.♖a3 ♗h6

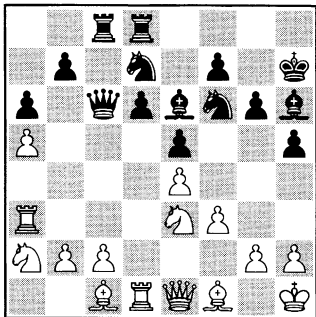
Dvoiris, in true Karpovian style, has manoeuvred better than his opponent, and has preserved a pleasant edge.

### 23.♗a2

Ready to gain more space with c4 and b4. Sometimes ♗b4 or ♖c3 are strong moves



too. At the same time this is an interesting psychological moment: White is relaxing his control over d5, giving Black the opportunity to finally break free.



**23...♙xa2!?**

Understandably, Black no longer sticks to his (passive) guns. Instead, 23...♙xe3? fails to the intermediate 24.♘b4! (24.♙xe3 ♖xc2 was the idea) 24...♖c7 25.♙xe3.

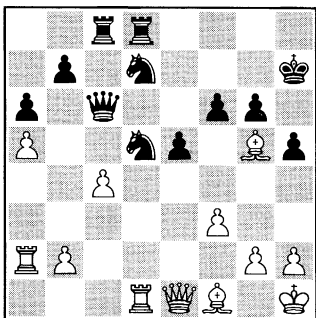
**24.♖xa2 ♙xe3 25.♙xe3 d5**

This was Black's intention when he traded his two bishops for the White knights which had been controlling d5 for so long. Just bad is 25...♖xc2 26.♖xd6.

**26.exd5 ♘xd5 27.♙g5?!**

Stronger is 27.♙g1.

**27...f6 28.c4!**

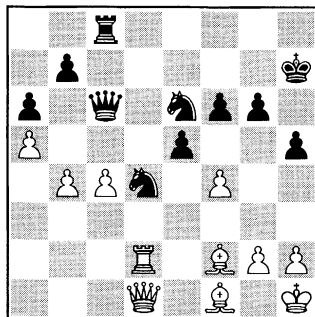


**28...♗e7 29.♙e3 ♘f5 30.♙f2 ♘c5**

**31.b4**

With two bishops and a queenside majority it is now clear why Dvoiris has allowed Black to free himself. Still, Black has counterplay and can be happy with his decision to take on a2.

**31...♖xd1 32.♖xd1 ♗e6 33.♖d2 ♘fd4 34.f4**



**34...♖f8**

White wins after 34...♗xf4 35.♙xd4 exd4 36.♖xd4 ♗e6 37.♖d6 ♖e8 38.♖d7+.

**35.♙g1 ♖f7 36.♖e1 ♖d6 37.c5 ♖d5 38.fxe5 fxe5 39.♙e3?! ♖e4 40.♙d3 ♖g4 41.♙h1 ♘c6**

41...♘f5! 42.♖e2 h4 with counterplay and only a slight edge for White.

**42.♖b2 ♘ed4 43.h3 ♖e6 44.♙e4 ♖c4 45.♙h2 ♙g7**

45...♖f1 46.♖d2 gains nothing.

**46.♙f2 ♙h7 47.♙b1!? ♖d7 48.♖e4 ♖e6 49.♙e3 ♘f5 50.b5!**

Making progress on the queenside.

**50...axb5 51.♖xb5 ♖f7 52.♙g5 ♖d4 53.♖f3 ♖d7 54.♖b6**

White is winning now.

**54...♘cd4 55.♖e4 ♗e6 56.♙a2! ♘fd4 57.♙e3 ♖e7 58.♖xe5 ♖xc5 59.♖xe6 ♘f3+ 60.gxf3 ♖d2+ 61.♙g3 1-0**

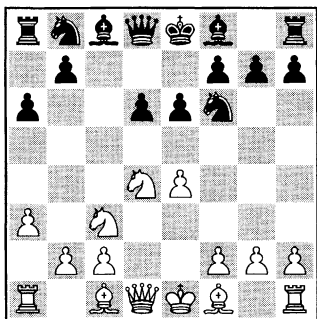
Despite the inaccuracies an impressive game by Dvoiris.



In the following (rapid) game we see how Nigel Short makes short work of Andrey Zhigalko's Najdorf. In the notes you will find an internet blitz game by the same Short against Peter Heine Nielsen, and a serious tournament game against Indian GM Sandipan.

□ Nigel Short  
 ■ Andrey Zhigalko  
 Warsaw rapid 2004

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4  
 ♙f6 5.♙c3 a6 6.a3 e6



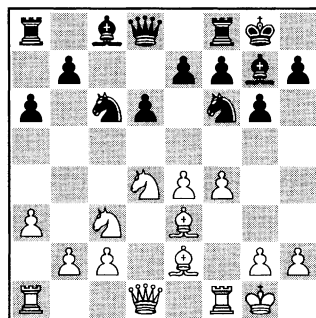
Black avoids the true Najdorf thrust and prefers a 'Scheveningen' reasoning that ...a6 will be more useful than a3. Indeed, ...a6 is nearly always played, while some players prefer set-ups with a4 (to prevent ...b5 for the time being) to those with a3 (to prevent ...b4, and ...♗b4).

The classical 6...♗c6 is unpopular with Najdorf players. White can go for the Sozin with 7.♗c4 when a3 is moderately useful. Also possible is 7.♗e2 but I would not really recommend it since apart from 7...e6, Black can also play 7...e5 and 7...g6.

An important option is 7.f4 when Black can go for 7...♗g4!? (7...e6 and now 8.♗e2 or 8.♗f3 followed by ♗d3; alternatively there

is 7...e5 8.♗f3 ♗g4 9.♗e2 ♗e7 with interesting play) 8.♗f3 g6 9.h3 ♗xf3 10.♖xf3 ♗g7 11.♗d3 0-0 12.0-0 when both sides have their chances. Note that a3 is a very useful move in this type of position.

However, the most important alternative for 6...e5 and 6...e6 is the Dragon-like 6...g6 since White has played a3 it makes less sense to go for queenside castling, hence play continues with 7.♗e2 ♗g7 8.0-0 0-0 9.♗e3 (Also playable is 9.♗g5 ♗c6 10.♗b3 ♗e6 11.f4 b5 12.♗f3 ♖c8 13.♗d5 ♗d7 14.c3 J.Littlewood-King, British Team Championship 2004/05) 9...♗c6 10.f4



10...♗g4 (this is considered best in the corresponding position with 6.a4) 11.♗xc6 ♗xe2.

Now Short-Nielsen, playchess.com Internet 2004, went 12.♗xd8 ♗xd1 13.♖axd1 ♖fxd8 ½-½. If White wants to play he should try 12.♗xe7+ ♖xe7 13.♖xe2 when Black must play 13...♖ae8! – 13...♗e4 14.♗d5 is better for White – when 6.a4 Najdorf theory gives 14.♗d4 ♗xe4 as equal. My recommendation is 14.e5! dxe5 15.f5, something I have played in the position with the a-pawn on a4, when my opponent (German IM Michael Hoffmann) played 15...♖b4!?. Need I say more?

### 7.f4

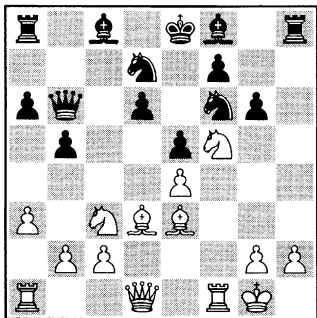
Short deliberately plays this active move



rather than the Scheveningen with 7.♙e2. His idea is to play ♙d3, when White may well find himself a tempo up on traditional Scheveningen lines where he plays ♙e2-d3 at some point. Thus, White would gain the useful a3 in the process!

### 7...♙e7

In Gibraltar 2006, Short had to face 7...b5. He went for immense tactical complications with 8.♙d3 ♘bd7 9.0-0 g6 10.f5!? ♗b6 11.♙e3 e5 12.fxg6! hxg6 (12...exd4 13.gxf7+ gives White a winning attack) 13.♙f5



13...♘c5 14.b4 (a less violent attempt to refute Black's risky play is 14.♘g3 ♘g4 – 14...♙h6!? 15.♙f2; 14...♗d8 15.♗f3+ – 15.♘d5 ♗a7 16.♙f2) 14...gxf5 15.bxc5 dxc5 16.♘d5 (16.exf5 ♙b7 is fine for Black) 16...♘d5 17.♙xb5+ (the point of Short's play) 17...axb5 18.♗xd5 f4 (Sandipan returns material to fend off the attack, meanwhile he could have gone for 18...♗b8! 19.♙ad1 and now not 19...♙e7 20.♗c6+ ♙f8 21.♙h6+ but 19...f6! a heroic non-human defence) 19.♗xa8 ♗b7 20.♗xb7 ♙b7 21.♙d2 ♙xe4 (Black has more or less sufficient compensation) 22.♙ab1 ♙xc2 23.♙xb5 ♙d6 24.♙c1 ♙f5?! (24...♙g6) 25.♙bxc5 (returning the exchange for a better ending) 25...♙xc5+ 26.♙xc5 f6 27.♙xf4! ♙f7 28.♙d2 Short eventually

managed to convert his slight endgame advantage into the notorious rook and bishop versus rook ending.

Nevertheless, a draw was the final result after 124 moves, Short-Sandipan, Gibraltar 2006.

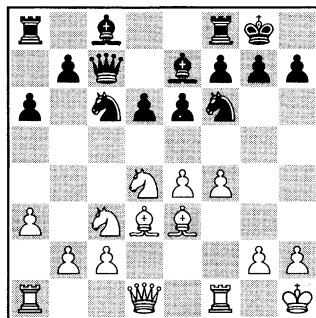
### 8.♙e3 ♘c6 9.♙d3 0-0

Of course not 9...♗b6?? since 10.♘f5 ♗xb2? 11.♘a4 traps her majesty. 9...e5 now or on the next move is possible though somewhat better for White.

### 10.0-0 ♗c7

Since this is a rapid game we should not criticize Zhigalko's play too severely. In the end he loses because he plays too many 'natural' (superficial) moves. One way to take advantage of the bishop on d3 was 10...♘xd4!? 11.♙xd4 e5 when 12.fxe5 dxe5 13.♙xe5? is bad due to 13...♘g4.

### 11.♙h1



### 11...b5 12.♗f3 ♙b7 13.♙ae1

Short does not hide his intentions and has developed his pieces in the most aggressive way. A kingside attack will follow, and therefore Black's next move is out of place.

### 13...♘d7? 14.♗h3

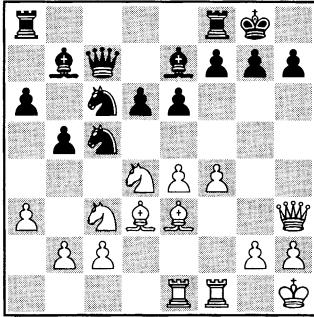
Eying h7 (the threat is 15.e5), but also e6 (thus preparing 15.f5). It is hard for Black to prevent both.

### 14...♘c5

To prevent 15.e5 because of 15...♘xd3. In-



stead 14...♖xd4 15.♙xd4 ♘c5 (15...e5 16.♘d5!) 16.f5 transposes.



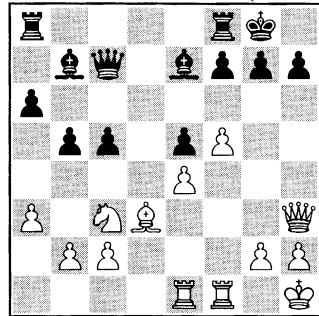
### 15.f5! ♗xd4

White is also better after 15...♗xd3 16.cxd3 ♗xd4 17.♙xd4 e5 18.♙e3.

### 16.♙xd4 e5

Closing one diagonal, but with his subsequent moves Short deftly demonstrated that the b1-h7 diagonal can be opened.

### 17.♙xc5! dxc5



Disaster also strikes after 17...♖xc5 18.f6! ♙xf6 19.♖xf6 gxf6 20.♖h6! with a winning attack (Black is still alive after 20.♗d5 ♙xd5 21.exd5 ♖fe8!).

### 18.f6! ♙xf6 19.♗d5 ♖d6

White also wins after 19...♙xd5 20.exd5 h6 (20...h5 21.♖xf6 gxf6 22.♖h5 ♖fe8 – or 22...♖fd8 23.♖h6 – 23.♙e4+–) 21.♖xf6.

### 20.♖xf6! gxf6 21.♖h6

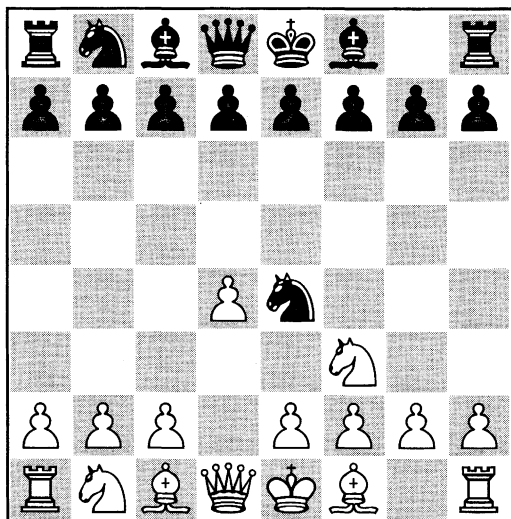
1-0



# CHAPTER 8

## *Adrian Mikhalchishin*

### The Döry Defence



1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 ♘e4

From chess history it is well known that wealthy patrons sometimes had as their hobby the playing and studying of a favourite variation, and they were very happy to sponsor theme tournaments with the participation of great players. We might think of the tournaments of Isaac Rice, where the gambit named after him was tested.

With the opening of Baron Ladislaus Döry the situation was slightly different – the Baron was a remarkable chess enthusiast, who helped to organise many tournaments in Vienna. Both during his lifetime, and after his death tournaments were arranged in his name. In one of them – Vienna 1937 – the Döry Defence 1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 ♘e4?! was

tested. The point of the second move lies in the subsequent exchanges after a future ...♗b4. The Baron played his 2...♘e4 for the first time in an official game in 1923.

In modern chess hardly anyone plays this, but the idea of the defence is not altogether stupid. It is surprising that in this tournament the winner was none other than the great Paul Keres, who was already among the top five players in the world. It is interesting to see how the great Estonian played this opening for both one side and the other.

*Wiener Schachzeitung* reports some interesting details – the tournament was visited by Emanuel Lasker and his wife. Interestingly, Lasker had been deprived of his German cit-



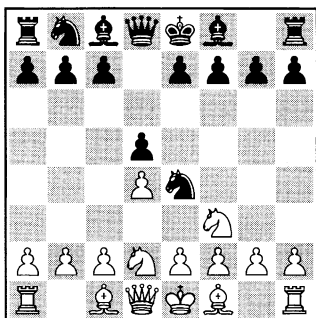
izenship, he had left the USSR, and he was probably on his way to the USA. How did all this happen? Lasker was not very fond of Austria, because Rothschild (a sponsor of Austrian tournaments before the First World War) had refused to be a patron of his match with Schlechter.

Other guests of the tournament were the Yugoslav grandmasters Milan Vidmar and Vasja Pirc.

□ Paul Keres  
■ Wolfgang Weil  
Vienna 1937

# 1.d4 ♘f6 2.♙f3 ♘e4 3.♙fd2

● It looks much more logical to play 3.♙bd2 d5:



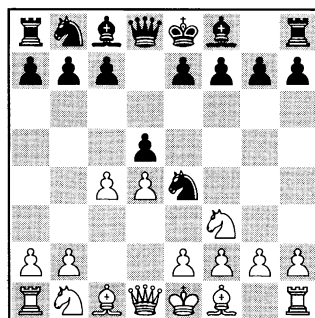
– 4.♙xe4 dxe4 5.♙g5 f5 6.e3 e6 7.h4 ♙e7 (I think that the plan of 7...♙d6 8.♙c4 ♙f6 was better, when Black may even castle queenside) 8.♙c4 ♙xg5 9.♙h5+ g6 10.♙xg5 ♙xg5 11.hxg5 with an obvious advantage in the ending, Keres-Podhorzer, Vienna 1937.

– If White plays more modestly: 4.g3 c5 5.dxc5 ♘xc5 6.♙g2 ♘c6 7.0-0 e5 8.c4 d4?! (8...♙e6! is stronger) 9.b4! ♘d7 10.b5 ♘a5 11.♙e1!? ♙e7 12.f4 (12.♘d3!? and then 13.f4 is more interesting) 12...exf4 13.♙xf4

0-0 14.♙f1 ♘e5 15.♙b2, Podhorzer-Keres, Vienna 1937, and here 15...♙e6 or 15...♙b6 was correct, with the better game.

● 3.♙f4 d5 is very quiet (also possible is 3...c5 4.d5 ♙b6 5.♙c1 e6 6.c4 ♙e7 7.♘bd2 ♘xd2 8.♙xd2 d6 9.e4 e5 10.♙e3 f5 11.exf5 ♙xf5 and Black has no problems, Podhorzer-Weil, Vienna 1937) 4.e3 ♙g4 5.c4? (5.h3! should be included) 5...e5! 6.♙xe5 ♙b4+ 7.♘c3 ♘xc3 8.♙b3 ♘xa2+ 9.♘d1 dxc4, with advantage to Black, Becker-Keres, Vienna 1937.

● Of course, 3.c4 is very logical, and now Black can play 3...e6, which is considered later, or continue in the spirit of the Döry Defence with 3...d5!?, as the German player Berthold Bartsch played several times. And now there are the following possibilities:

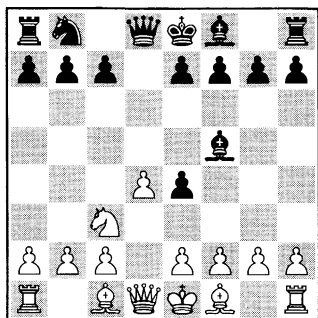


– 4.♘c3 ♘xc3 5.bxc3 e6 (the immediate 5...c5!? is also possible) 6.g3 c5 7.cxd5 ♙xd5?! (after 7...exd5!? Black has no problems) 8.♙g2 cxd4 9.cxd4 ♙b4+ 10.♙d2 ♙xd2+ 11.♙xd2 ♘c6 12.0-0 ♙a5 13.♙b2 with a serious advantage for White, Aseev-Bartsch, Neu-Isenburg 1992.

– 4.♙f4 e6 5.e3 c6?! (5...c5!? is obviously better, or even 5...♙b4+ 6.♘bd2 g5!) 6.♙d3 ♙a5+ 7.♘fd2 ♘xd2 8.♘xd2 dxc4 9.♙xc4 ♙b4 10.e4 0-0 11.0-0 ♘d7 12.e5! ♙xd2 13.♙xd2 ♙b6 14.♙g4! with a strong attack for White, Klinger-Bartsch, Zürich 1990.



**3...d5 4.♘xe4 dxe4 5.♘c3 ♕f5**



**6.g4!**

In the style of the young Keres, although in that tournament everyone played this! More restrained is 6.g3 e6 7.♘g2 ♘b4 with a normal game.

**6...♘g4 7.♘g2**

Against Becker Keres played 7.♘xe4, but after 7...e5! 8.dxe5 ♖xd1+ 9.♔xd1 ♘c6 10.f4 0-0-0+ Black had an excellent game.

**7...e6**

Black played simply in the following game: 7...f5 8.♘f4 e6 9.f3 exf3 10.exf3 ♘h5, Becker-Podhorzer, Vienna 1937, and here after the correct 11.♖e2 the play is very obscure, but it is clear that White has the initiative.

**8.♘xe4 ♘c6 9.c3 ♘h5?**

Keres recommended 9...♘f5, but 9...♖d7 was also interesting.

**10.♖b3 ♖b8 11.♘g5! ♖c8**

If 11...♘e7 Keres had prepared 12.♘xe7 ♖xe7 13.♘g3! – a double attack.

**12.♖d1 ♘g6 13.c4**

White had another way of strengthening his position: 13.d5 exd5 14.♖xd5 and now Black should not fall for 14...♘xe4? 15.♖xe4+ ♖e6 16.♘h3! – a nice trick! – but play 14...♖e6.

**13...♘xe4 14.♘xe4 ♘e7 15.♖g1 ♘g5 16.♖xg5 g6**

If 16...0-0 Keres was ready to ‘kill’ his opponent by 17.♘xh7+! ♔xh7 18.♖h3+ ♔g8 19.♖h6 g6 20.♖d3 with a mating attack.

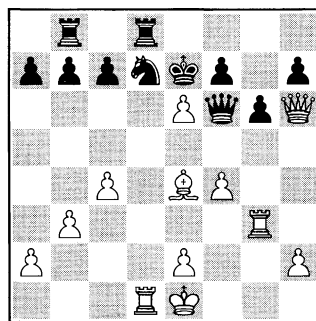
**17.♖h3**

17.d5! was even better.

**17...♖d8!**

It is time to return the queen to the defence.

**18.♖g3 ♖f6 19.d5 ♘e5 20.♖h6 ♔e7 21.b3 ♖hd8 22.f4 ♘d7 23.dxe6**



**23...♘c5!**

Interesting counterplay. Now Keres gets himself lured into sacrificing a piece.

**24.♘d5 c6 25.exf7 cxd5 26.♖e3+ ♔xf7 27.♖xh7+ ♔f8 28.cxd5 ♖e8 29.♖g3 ♖xf4!**

Black is quite right to fearlessly open the f-file.

**30.♖d2 ♖f7**

30...♘e4? 31.♖f3 ♖xf3 did not work, as White would interpose 32.♖h6+!.

**31.♖h8+ ♔e7 32.♖d4 b6?**

After 32...♘d6! Black has a very solid position.

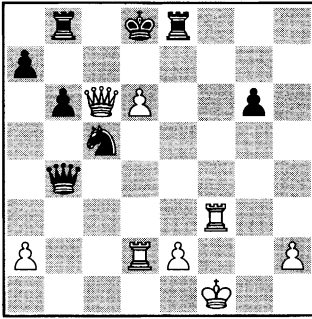
**33.♖f3 ♖h7 34.♖f6+ ♔d7 35.♖c6+ ♔d8 36.♖d6+ ♔c8**

In the event of 36...♘d7 the black king would have been detained in the centre.

**37.b4 ♖h4+ 38.♔f1 ♖xb4 39.♖c6+ ♔d8 40.d6?**

Bravely but foolishly avoiding the draw by perpetual check with 40.♖d6+.





#### 40...Rb7?

After 40...Rc8! White would have been unable to save the game.

41.d7 Qxd7! 42.Rxd7+ Qxd7 43.Qa8+ Qe7?!

The alternative 43...Qc7 would have ensured a draw.

#### 44.Qe3+ Qf6?

This time it was imperative to go in the other direction – 44...Qd6!?

45.Qxe8 Qd4 46.Qe6+ Kg5 47.Qxg6+

Black resigned.

Similar to the line 1.d4 Qf6 2.Qf3 Qe4 is 1.d4 Qf6 2.c4 e6 3.Qf3 Qe4. None other than the fourth World Champion, Alexander Alekhine, played like this.

□ Ernesto Rotunno

■ Alexander Alekhine

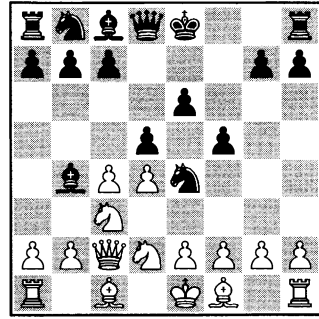
Carasco 1938

#### 1.d4 Qf6 2.c4 e6 3.Qf3 Qe4!

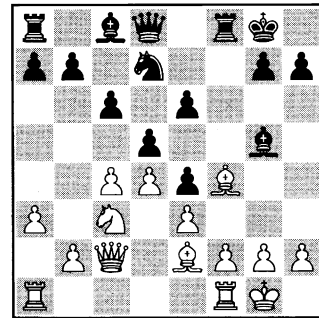
It is interesting that Alekhine first made this move back in 1922.

#### 4.Qbd2

Against Marshall in New York in 1927 Alekhine himself played more cunningly: 4.Qfd2 Qb4 5.Qc2 d5 6.Qc3 f5 (it was better to play 6...Qxc3 7.bxc3 Qe7)



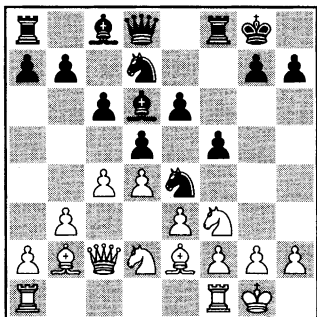
7.Qdx4 fxe4?! (to me it seems more sensible to capture with the other pawn – 7...dxe4!?) 8.Qf4 0-0 9.e3 c6 (too passive – clearly better was 9...c5!?) 10.dxc5 d4 11.0-0 d3 with a complicated game) 10.Qe2 Qd7 11.a3 Qe7 12.0-0 Qg5 (Black must try to exchange bishops, but all the same White has an appreciable advantage)



13.f3! (a good temporary pawn sacrifice) 13...Qxf4 14.exf4 Qxf4 15.fxe4 Qxf1+ 16.Qxf1 e5!? (how else can he complete the development of his pieces?) 17.Qd2! c5 (another tactical stroke, but it does not help greatly) 18.dxe5 d4 19.Qf4! dxc3 20.Qf7+ Qh8 21.bxc3 Qg8 22.Qe7 h6 (Black simply has no moves) 23.Qh5 a5 24.e6 g6 (24...Qf6 25.Qf7! Qh7 26.Qxf6! gxf6 27.Qf8+ also does not help) 25.exd7 Qxd7 26.Qf7, 1-0. 4...f5 5.Qc2



Vukovic-Alekhine, Vienna 1922, went 5.e3  
 ♖b4 6.♗d3 b6 7.a3 ♗xd2+ 8.♜xd2 ♗b7  
 9.♗xe4 fxe4 10.♞g4!  
 5...d5 6.e3 ♜d7 7.♗e2 c6 8.0-0 ♗d6  
 9.b3 0-0 10.♗b2



10...♞f6!

Black defends his e5-point and prepares an attack on the kingside. He has obtained an excellent Stonewall.

11.g3

The knight at e4 must somehow be tackled, but the immediate 11.♞e1 with the idea of 12.f3 seemed too passive to White.

11...g5 12.♞e1 ♞h6! 13.♜g2 ♜df6  
 14.f4

Radically forestalling the opponent's play on the kingside.

14...♗d7 15.♜xe4 ♜xe4 16.♗f3 ♜f6  
 17.♞e1 ♗e8 18.♜d3 ♗h5

Both sides improve the placing of their pieces.

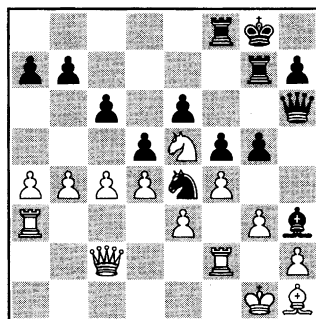
19.♗h1?

White does not want to exchange bishops, but now the black bishop becomes strong. 19.♞e2!? was better.

19...♗g4 20.♞e5 ♗h3 21.♞f2 ♞ae8  
 22.a4 ♞e7 23.♗a3!

The correct idea – the exchange of the dark-squared bishops.

23...♗xa3 24.♞xa3 ♞g7 25.b4 ♞e4



26.♗xe4 fxe4 27.♞h1 gxf4 28.exf4  
 ♗f5 29.♞e2 a5 30.b5 c5 31.♞e3 ♞h5  
 32.♞a1?

A mistake – the g3-pawn should have been defended. Correct was 32.♞d2 with equality.

32...cxd4 33.♞xd4 ♞xg3 34.♞g1  
 ♞xg1+ 35.♞xg1 ♗h3 36.c5 ♞xf4  
 37.c6 ♞e2!

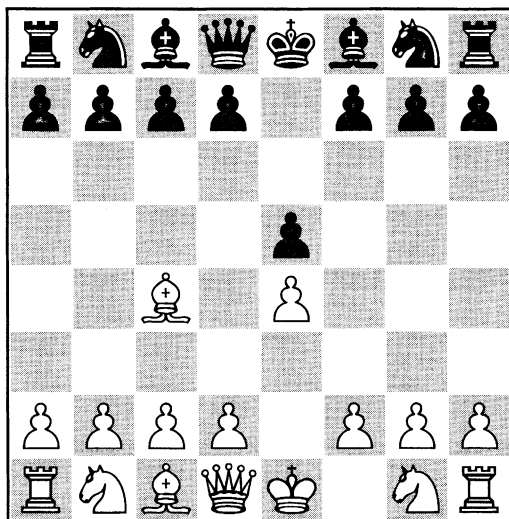
White resigned.



# CHAPTER 9

## *Glenn Flear*

### Bishops First Please!



#### Early queen moves after 1.e4 e5 2.♘c4

After 1.e4 the reply 1...e5 gives White a few headaches. Which line of the Spanish is Black intending to play, or, is he intending to play the solid Petroff?

Not everyone wants to get involved in a big theoretical battle, especially if it's in their opponent's pet-line. For SOS readers a straightforward easy-to-learn repertoire that sets a few problems without much risk might be the order of the day. If it is, then read on!

The old adage 'knights before bishops' has many exceptions. Here White brings out his king's bishop and indeed often his queen before his king's knight, unusual but logical. White confirms his presence in the centre and in particular renders the freeing

...d5-break less than evident. If the central arena stays quiet then White takes the opportunity to ensure that his queen is more active than Black's.

The repertoire that I am suggesting here contains lines from the Bishop's Opening and the Vienna. Some of these ideas have even been employed at the top level and may not be the usual SOS fare. However, with this practical mini-repertoire using a move order to reduce Black's options, you'll steer the game away from your opponent's main lines.

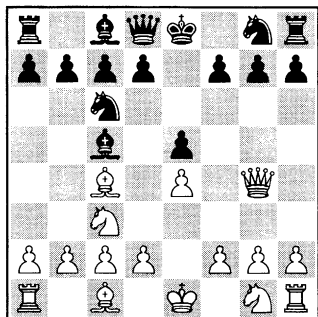
You won't need to learn too much theory, but you'll need to know that the bishop comes first!



# **I Meeting 2...♖c5**

## **1.e4 e5 2.♖c4 ♗c5**

After 2...♗c6 3.♗c3 ♖c5 White has 4.♗g4! which doesn't give Black an easy time.



Now 4...♗f6 just provokes White to generate a strong attack: 5.♗d5! ♗xf2+ 6.♗d1 ♗f8 7.♗h3 ♗d4 8.d3 ♖b6 9.♗f1 ♗d8 10.c3 ♗c5 11.♗g5 and Black is on the ropes: Alekhine-Lugowski, Belgrade simul 1931. If 4...g6 then 5.♗f3 and now:

– 5...♗f6 6.♗d5 ♗xf3 7.♗xf3 ♖d6 and White has the slightly easier game after both 8.d3 and 8.c3.

– 5...♗f6 6.♗ge2 d6 7.d3 ♖g4 8.♗g3 ♖e6 9.♖g5 ♗h5 10.♗h4 ♗d7 11.♗g3 and White has won the opening battle due to Black's weak squares and passive position, Watson-Murshed, London Lloyds Bank 1992.

## **3.♗h5!?**

Not quite as daring as the 'Nakamura Attack' (1.e4 e5 2.♗h5) but sufficiently annoying for Black all the same.

I'm not keen however on the sister-variation starting with 3.♗g4?! (although see above for the analogous position with the extra moves ♗c3 and ...♗c6 when this move is considerably stronger). Not good is the gambit try 3...d5?, when after 4.♗xg7 ♗f6 5.♗xf6 ♗xf6 6.exd5 ♗g8, White has 7.♗f1! ♗e4 8.♗f3 with the point that 8...♗xf2 is

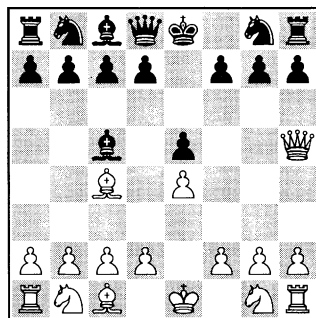
well met by 9.d4!.

Stronger is 3...♗f6, when:

– 4.♗c3 ♗e7 seems fine for Black as here White must move his queen a second time and thus lose time. (In some books 4...♗xf2+ is given as a mistake but Black is actually better after 5.♗d1 ♗e7 e.g. 6.♗h3 ♗f6 7.♗f1 d5!.)

– 4.♗g3!? is certainly playable.

3.b4 is for die-hard romantics! Otherwise 3.♗c3 could transpose to some of the lines considered lower down. The most 'normal' move is 3.♗f3 but the text move will raise a few eyebrows and so is more fitting for an SOS column!



## **3...♗e7**

The other main option is 3...♗f6, which is not a bad move, but f6 tends to be the best square for a knight! White should now develop in classical style with the knowledge that his pieces will be more harmoniously placed than Black's. 4.♗f3 d6 (4...♗c6 5.♗c3 ♗e7 6.0-0 looks more comfortable for White) 5.♗c3 c6 6.d3 ♗g6 7.♗xg6 hxc6:

– Now I prefer 8.♖e3!, e.g. 8...♖xe3 (8...♗d7 9.0-0 b5 10.♖b3 ♗gf6 is the most solid keeping White down to a slight pull) 9.fxe3 ♗h6 10.0-0 and White has a promising lead in development.

– 8.♗g5!? ♗h6 9.f3 ♗e7 10.h4 f6 11.♗h3



a5 12.a4 ♖f7 13.♟f2 with balanced chances, Flachsbart-Rabl, Germany 1999/2000.

#### 4.♟f3 d6

After 4...♟f6!? capturing on e5 doesn't lead to any advantage: 5.♞xe5 (5.♞h4 keeps more tension) 5...♙xf2+ 6.♞e2 ♞xe5 7.♟xe5 ♙b6 8.♙xf7+ ♞e7 9.♙b3 d6 10.♟f3 ♟xe4 as in Mohr-Gostisa, Nova Gorica 1994, which was equal.

The flashy 4...♙xf2+?! loses time: 5.♞xf2 ♞c5+ 6.d4 ♞xc4 7.♞xe5+ ♟f8 8.♟a3 and White had a clear advantage in Flohr-Nieuwenhuis, Zwolle 1998.

4...♟c6 5.d3 d6 6.♟c3 ♙b4?! (a concession – after the superior 6...♟f6 7.♞h4 White has nothing significant, but Black might get irritated by White's more active queen) 7.0-0 ♙xc3 8.bxc3 ♟f6 9.♞h4, Staunton-Cochrane, London 1842, and White had an edge.

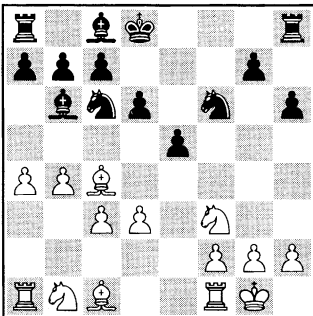
#### 5.♟g5 ♟f6 6.♞xf7+ ♞xf7 7.♙xf7+ ♟e7 8.♙c4 h6 9.♟f3 ♟xe4 10.0-0

Given as equal by the ancient Bilguer, but even without queens Black's centralized king isn't ideally placed.

#### 10...♞d8

According to Lane the position is now equal. I like:

#### 11.c3! ♟c6 12.d3 ♟f6 13.b4 ♙b6 14.a4



With a pull for White, as his position is eas-

ier to handle, whereas in contrast Black's king rather gets in the way.

## II Playing for ...d5

### 1.e4 e5 2.♙c4 ♟f6 3.d3 c6

It's tempting to 'punish' White by claiming a lion's share of the centre, but recent experience suggests that Black has then to be very careful not to succumb to the inevitable White pressure.

#### 4.♟f3 d5

After 4...♙e7 5.0-0 (the blunder 5.♟xe5?? should be avoided in view of 5...♞a5+) 5...d6 play can continue as in a closed Spanish or Italian game. White's king bishop is slightly more active than Black's and the early ...c6 leaves Black without the natural square for his knight and thus he may find himself slightly cramped. Here are a couple of examples, where Black aims to exchange his queen's bishop either via ...♙e6 or ...♙g4. In both cases he achieves near-equality) 6.c3 0-0 7.♙b3 ♙g4 (7...♟bd7 8.♞e1 ♟b6 9.♟bd2 ♙e6 10.♟f1 ♟fd7 11.♟g3 ♞c7 12.d4 ♙xb3 13.axb3 as in I.Rogers-J.Rogers, British league 2001/02) 8.h3 ♙h5 9.♞e1 ♟bd7 10.♟bd2 ♟c5 11.♙c2 ♟e6 12.♟f1 ♟d7 13.♟g3 ♙xf3 14.♞xf3 g6 Gelfand-Yusupov, Munich 1994, with the solid ...♙g5 in the air.

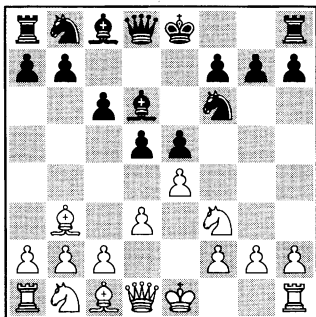
#### 5.♙b3 ♙d6

After 5...♙b4+ there is a safe option available with 6.♙d2, but 6.c3 keeps the tension and is probably slightly favourable, e.g. 6...♙d6 7.♙g5 ♙e6 8.♟bd2 ♟bd7 9.d4 exd4 10.exd5 ♙xd5 11.♙xd5 cxd5 12.♟xd4 with a small edge, Yudasin-Alterman, Israeli Championship, Tel-Aviv 1994.

After 5...a5 White can react aggressively with 6.♟c3!? ♙b4 (after 6...d4 7.♟xe5 dxc3 8.♟xf7 ♙b4 9.0-0 the complications favour White) 7.a3 ♙xc3+ 8.bxc3 ♟bd7 9.exd5 ♟xd5 10.0-0 0-0 11.♞e1 ♞e8 12.c4 ♟e7 13.♟g5 h6 14.♟e4 a4 15.♙a2 c5 16.♟d6



♖f8 17.c3 ♜g6 18.♙b1 with an interesting struggle where White's threat of a timely d3-d4 gives him the edge, Kasparov-Bareev, Linares 1993.



### 6.exd5!

I consider this to be more of a challenge than the traditional 6.♟c3 dxe4! 7.♟g5 0-0 8.♟cxe4 ♟xe4 9.♟xe4 ♙f5! 10.♟f3 ♙xe4 11.dxe4 ♟d7 12.c3 a5 13.a4 ♟c5 14.♙c2 b5 with easy equality, Adams-Kramnik, Tilburg 1998.

### 6...cxd5

The alternative is to capture with the knight – 6...♟xd5 – but White then has access to c4 or e4 for use by a knight: 7.0-0 0-0 8.♞e1 ♞e8 (otherwise after 8...♟d7 9.♟bd2 ♙c7 10.♟e4 a5 11.a3 ♟h8 12.♙g5 f6 13.♙d2 White also has a pull: 13...♟7b6 14.h3 ♟e7 15.♟e2 ♟f5 16.♞ad1 ♟e7 17.d4!? – a radical way to open up lines for his pieces! – 17...♟xd4 18.♟xd4 exd4 19.♟f3 with compensation, Izoria-Erenburg, Khanty-Mansiysk 2005) 9.♟bd2 ♙c7 10.♟e4 ♙f5 11.♙g5 f6 12.♙d2 ♟d7 13.♟h4 ♙e6 14.♟h5 a5 15.a3 ♟f4 16.♙xe6+ ♟xe6 17.♞e3 ♟f4 18.♟g4 with continuing pressure, Efimenko-Khuzman, Moscow 2006.

### 7.♙g5

Black now has to decide how best to retain his centre.

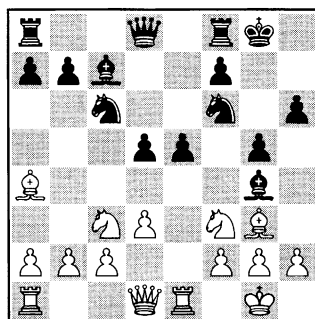
### 7...♙e6

7...d4 8.♟bd2 0-0 9.0-0 ♟c6 10.♞e1 a6 11.h3 h6 12.♙h4 ♞e8 13.♟c4 ♙c7 14.♙g3 ♟d7 15.a4 ♟f6 16.c3 Benjamin-P.H.Nielsen, Las Vegas 1999, and White kept some initiative.

### 8.♟c3 ♙c7

After 8...♟a5 Black soon has problems: 9.0-0 ♟bd7 10.♟e1! e.g. 10...♞c8 (or 10...♟c5 11.♙xf6 gxf6 12.d4 exd4 13.♟xd5 0-0-0 14.♟e4 ♙e5 15.♟f4 f5 16.♟xe6 fxe4 17.♟xc5 exf3 18.♟d3 fxe2 19.♞fe1 Tiviakov-Swinkels, Vlissingen 2004) 11.d4 ♙b4 12.♙d2 ♙xc3 13.♙xc3 ♞xc3 14.bxc3 e4 15.♟g5 0-0 16.c4, Delchev-Jovanic, Zadar 2004.

9.0-0 ♟c6 10.♞e1 0-0 11.♙a4! h6 12.♙h4 g5 13.♙g3 ♙g4



### 14.♙xc6

14.h3 ♙xf3 15.♟xf3 ♟d4 16.♟d1 ♟b8 17.♟b5 Drabke-Przedmojski, Kolobrzeg 2005, only gave White a minimal pull.

### 14...bxc6 15.h3!

15.♙xe5 ♙xe5 16.♞xe5 ♟b8 17.d4 ♟xb2 and Black seems to have equalized.

### 15...♙xf3 16.♟xf3

It's not much but Black has to be careful about various potential weaknesses.

### III 2...♟f6 and 3...♟c6

1.e4 e5 2.♙c4 ♟f6 3.d3 ♟c6 4.♟c3

A 'quiet' Vienna Game is in prospect, but via



the Bishop's Opening. Playing the Vienna move order gives Black extra options, for example 1.e4 e5 2.♘c3 ♟f6 3.♙c4 permits the wild and deeply analysed 3...♟xe4!?

#### 4...♟a5

Black's most solid defence.

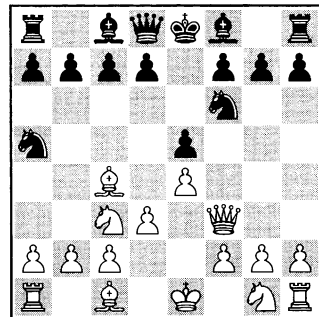
Black often develops his king's bishop either to c5 or b4. Although these moves aren't bad they tend to give White more chances of emerging with something tangible out of the opening.

– 4...♙c5 5.♙g5 (the other main move is 5.f4 transposing into a fairly well-known variation of the King's Gambit Declined) 5...h6 (5...♟a5 6.♙b3 ♟xb3 7.axb3 c6 8.♟f3 d6 9.0-0 h6 10.♙e3 ♙g4 11.♙xc5 dxc5 12.h3 ♙xf3 13.♙xf3 0-0 14.♟e2 Larsen-Smyslov, Biel izt 1976; 5...d6 6.♟d5 ♙e6 7.c3 ♙xd5 8.♙xd5 ♙d7 9.♙xf6 gxf6 10.♙f3 ♙g8 11.♟e2 ♙g6 12.♟g3 when White's grip gives him the better chances, J.Hansen-A.Karlsson, Copenhagen 1995) 6.♙h4 d6 (after 6...a6 7.♟d5 g5 8.♙g3 d6 White can keep a pull by 9.h4! g4 10.h5! ♟xd5 11.♙xd5 ♙g5 12.♟e2 ♙e6 13.c3 ♙xd5 14.exd5 ♟e7 15.♙b3 I.Rogers-Rogulj, Mendrisio 1985) 7.♟a4 ♙b6 8.♟xb6 axb6 9.f3 (supporting the centre and retaining the dark-squared bishop) 9...♙e6 10.♟e2 g5 11.♙f2 d5 12.♙b3 ♙e7 13.c3 0-0 14.♙c2 h5 15.h4! (this counterthrust helps demonstrate the downside of Black's early pawn advances) 15...g4 16.♙e3 (or 16.0-0-0 first) 16...gxf3 17.gxf3 dxe4 18.dxe4 ♟d7 19.0-0-0 ♙xb3 20.axb3 ♟c5 21.b4 ♟e6 22.♟g3 with a small pull, I.Rogers-Teichmann, Edinburgh ch-GBR 1985.

– 4...♙b4 5.♙g5 h6 (5...d6 6.♟e2 ♙e6 7.0-0 h6 8.♙xf6 ♙xf6 9.♟d5 ♙xd5 10.♙xd5 yields a pleasant edge for White who has the slightly more active position. He can rapidly expand with d3-d4 or f2-f4 e.g. 10...♙c5 11.c3 0-0 12.♟h1 ♟e7 13.♙b3 g5 14.d4 ♙b6 15.♙d3 ♟h8 and now in

Spielmann-Yates, Baden-Baden 1925, White played 16.f4! anyway and after 16...gxf4 17.g3 had a clear advantage) 6.♙xf6 ♙xc3+ 7.bxc3 ♙xf6 8.♟e2 d6 (otherwise 8...♟a5 9.♙b3 ♟xb3 10.axb3 d6 11.0-0 0-0 12.♙d2 ♙g5 13.f4 exf4 14.♙xf4 gives White the shade of an edge, Nicevski-Gligoric, Kladovo ch-YUG 1991) 9.0-0 g5 (rather than facing a pleasant white initiative after 9...0-0 10.f4) 10.d4 h5 11.f3 h4 12.♙d3 ♙d7 13.♙ab1 (where does Black go with his king? Can he really do anything positive whilst White just probes away?) 13...♙b8, Spielmann-J.Möller, Copenhagen 1923, and now Konstantinopolsky suggests 14.♙b5 with ideas such as ♙c4 and d4-d5. White's position is the easier to play.

#### 5.♙f3!?



Queen before knight! This move, a favourite of Australian GM Ian Rogers, doesn't give any objective advantage to White. However, as Black finds it hard to break out of White's grip, there is the psychological plus of having imposed the type of position on the opponent.

Better known is 5.♟e2, with similar pawn structures and play, except that it's not easy to find a positive role for the queen early on. The reasoning behind the main move is that the queen isn't badly placed on f3 and White clears the d1-square for a rook.



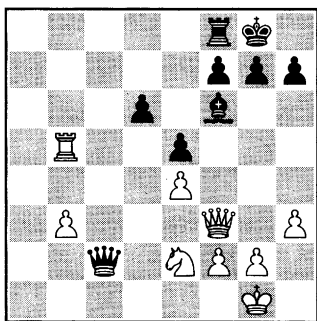
## 5...♘xc4

The other principal move 5...c6 often transposes and in any case is very similar. Here are some typical examples: 6.♘ge2 ♘xc4 (for 6...b5 see Bricard-Flear at the end of this chapter) 7.dxc4 d6 8.h3 ♖e6 9.b3 ♖e7 10.0-0 h5!? (otherwise 10...♙a5 11.♞d1 ♞d8 12.♙b2 0-0 13.♘g3 g6 14.a4 ♘e8 was about equal in I.Rogers-Del Rey, Zaragoza 2002) 11.♞d1 ♘d7 12.♘g3 g6 13.♘f5 ♘c5 14.♖a3 with unclear play, I.Rogers-D.Howell, British league 2004/05.

## 6.dxc4 d6 7.h3 ♖e6 8.b3 c6

Trying to do without this move at some point isn't easy, e.g. 8...♘d7 9.♘ge2 ♙f6 10.♘d5 ♙xf3?! (10...♙xd5 11.cxd5 ♙xf3 12.gxf3 just gives White a space advantage and probably the better bishop) 11.♘xc7+ ♘d8 12.♘xe6+ fxe6 13.gxf3 and White had won a pawn in I.Rogers-Laird, Gold Coast 1995.

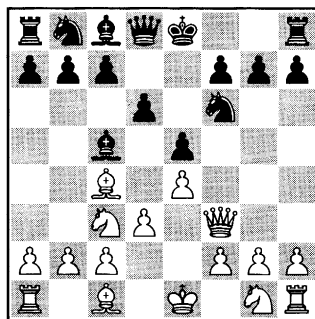
9.♘ge2 a6 10.a4 ♖e7 11.0-0 0-0 12.♞d1 b5!? 13.axb5 axb5 14.♙xa8 ♙xa8 15.cxb5 cxb5 16.♖g5 ♙c6 17.♖xf6 ♖xf6 18.♘d5 ♖xd5 19.♙xd5 ♙xc2 20.♙xb5



With balanced chances, I.Rogers-Hector, Wijk aan Zee B 2003.

## IV 3...♖c5

1.e4 e5 2.♖c4 ♘f6 3.d3 ♖c5 4.♘c3 d6 5.♙f3!?



Another little surprise!

Your opponent will probably be prepared for the conventional moves 5.f4 and 5.♖g5 but not for this!

## 5...♘c6 6.♘ge2 h6

After 6...♖g4 7.♙g3 h5 Black soon regretted giving away the g5-square in I.Rogers-Martinovsky, Hawaii 1998, as after 8.♖g5 ♘a5 9.♖b3 ♘xb3 10.axb3 c6 11.♙h4 ♙e7 12.h3 ♖d7 13.f4 0-0-0 14.♞f1 ♞de8 15.0-0-0 exf4 16.d4 ♖b6 17.♘xf4 ♖d8 18.♞de1 ♙f8 19.e5 Black had serious problems.

## 7.♖e3

7.h3!? comes into consideration, stopping Black from using g4.

## 7...♖xe3

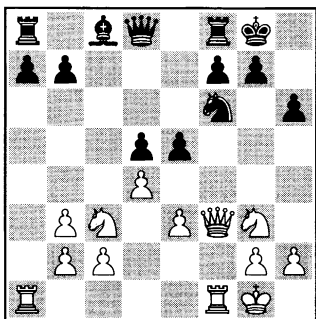
7...♘d4?! 8.♖xd4 exd4 9.♘d5 ♘xd5 10.♖xd5 0-0 11.0-0 should favour White who has the more active pieces. Bent Larsen suggests 7...♖g4 8.♙g3 ♖xe3 9.fxe3 ♘a5 as an improvement. Black can then exchange an extra pair of minor pieces and it will take longer for a white knight to come to the g3-square.

8.fxe3 ♖a5 9.♖b3 ♘xb3 10.axb3 c6 11.0-0 0-0 12.♘g3

White doesn't have much, but Black has no counterplay and White's pieces are more dynamic. White's two sets of doubled pawns enable his rooks to have open lines.

12...♘d5!? 13.exd5 cxd5 14.d4





Fixing the d5-pawn on a light-square and thus restricting Black's chances.

**14...exd4 15.exd4 ♟e6 16.♞ae1 ♖c8 17.♞e5 b5 18.♞d3 a6 19.♞f5 ♖c6 20.h3 ♟h8 21.b4**

With continuing pressure, Larsen-F. Petersen, Holstebro ch-DEN 1964.

□ Emmanuel Bricard

■ Glenn Flear

Narbonne-plage 2003

I've had to face 5.♞f3 a couple of times in recent years.

**1.e4 e5 2.♟c4 ♞f6 3.d3 ♞c6 4.♞c3 ♞a5 5.♞f3 c6 6.♞ge2 b5!?**

Although the following was solid: 6...♞xc4 7.dxc4 d6 8.0-0 ♞c7 9.h3 ♟e6 10.b3 ♟e7 11.♞d1 h6 12.♞g3 g6 13.a4 a5 14.♟a3 ♞d8 15.♞e3, it gave Black the sort of position where it was hard 'to play for a win' against a much lower-ranked player, Fillon-Flear, Saint-Chély-d'Aubrac 2002.

**7.♟b3 b4?!**

Although Black wins a tempo the weakness of c4 is a potential problem.

**8.♞d1 ♞xb3 9.axb3 d5 10.♟g5 ♟e7 11.♞e3 dxe4 12.dxe4 0-0 13.0-0**

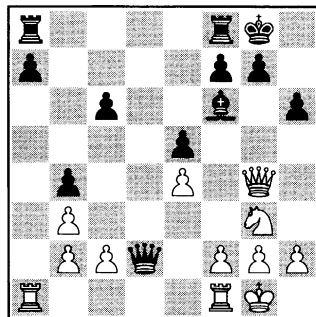
Simpler is 13.♞f5!? ♟xf5 14.♞xf5 with a slight plus.

**13...h6 14.♟xf6 ♟xf6 15.♞g4**

Black would equalize after 15.♞fd1 ♞c7

16.♞f5 ♟xf5 17.♞xf5 ♞fd8.

**15...♟xg4 16.♞xg4 ♞d2 17.♞g3!**



**17...♞fd8**

Not 17...♞xc2? 18.♞h5 ♟g5 19.h4 f5 20.exf5±.

**18.♞h5 ♞g5 19.♞e2 ♟e7 20.♞fd1 ♟c5 21.♞g3 ♟d4 22.♞ab1**

Black seems to be happy enough, but due to the weakness of c4 and the less flexible minor piece he has to be careful.

**22...g6 23.♞f1 a5 24.♞d2 a4 25.♞f3 ♞e7 26.bxa4 ♞xa4 27.h4**

Not 27.♞c4? due to the sneaky 27...♟xb2!.

**27...♞a7?!**

Better was 27...♞a2! to commit White to moving his b-pawn.

**28.♞c4 ♞ad7 29.♞d3 ♟c5**

I didn't like 29...c5 as White may eventually be able to play c2-c3.

**30.♞xd7 ♞xd7 31.g3 h5 32.♞a1 ♞d6 33.♟g2 ♟g7 34.♞a5 ♟d4 35.♞a6?!**

Both of us missed 35.c3! bxc3 36.bxc3 ♞a7 37.♞xe5! ♞f6 38.cxd4 ♞xa5 39.♞xc6 with advantage.

**35...♟xb2 36.♞xc6 ♞e7 37.♞c8 ♟c3 38.♞c6 ♞a7**

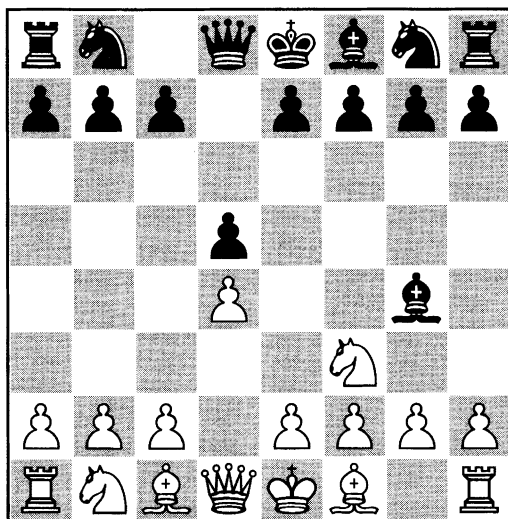
And the game was eventually drawn.



# CHAPTER 10

## *Jeroen Bosch*

### The Chigorin Attack



1.d4 d5 2.♘f3 ♗g4!?

#### 1.d4 d5 2.♘f3 ♗g4

Chigorin was fond of this move. Indeed play resembles (and sometimes transposes to) the Chigorin Defence: 1.d4 d5 2.c4 ♘c6. One could also compare this line to 1.d4 d5 2.♗g5 when White aims to prevent 2...♘f6 because of 3.♗xf6. In the SOS line under investigation here the bishop does not hit thin air but attacks the knight on f3. Thus, I would like to call it the Chigorin Attack. Black's second move is provocative. White cannot react too meekly (3.♘bd2, 3.e3, 3.g3, 3.♗f4 etc), for in that case Black would have solved the problem of his queenside bishop. This means that only 3.c4 and especially 3.♘e5 are critical. Chigorin's attack is fully

playable and may give rise to exciting complications. It has been played by numerous strong players after Chigorin. Most notably by Nigel Short who used it to good effect beating Garry Kasparov in a rapid game.

□ Mark Orr

■ Keith Arkell

Largs 1997

#### 1.♘f3 d5 2.d4 ♗g4 3.c4

Other moves, apart from 3.♘e5, are not dangerous. For instance:

– 3.e3 ♘d7 4.♗e2 e6 5.h3 (Black was fine in Von Bardeleben-Chigorin, Hastings 1895, after 5.b3 ♘gf6 6.♗b2 ♗d6 7.♘bd2



c6 8.♘e5 ♙xe2 9.♚xe2 0-0 10.f4 ♖c8 11.0-0 c5) 5...♙h5 6.0-0 ♙d6 7.c4 c6 8.♘c3 f5!? (the Dutch Stonewall with the light-squared bishop outside the pawn chain is an attractive choice. Black is also OK after 8...♘gf6) 9.cxd5 exd5 10.♚c2 ♘h6 11.♘e1 ♙xe2 12.♘xe2 0-0 13.♘d3 ♚e7, Kozlovskaya-Gaprindashvili, Moscow 1983.

– 3.♙g5 h6 4.♙h4 c6 5.c3 ♘d7 6.♘bd2 ♘gf6 7.e3 e5 8.♚b3 exd4 9.cxd4 ♚b6 and if anything then Black is better, Iotov-Drenchev, Sunny Beach 2005.

– 3.♙f4 ♙xf3 (3...e6 4.e3 ♙d6 5.♙g3 ♘f6 6.c4 ♘bd7 7.♘c3 ♙xg3 8.hxg3 c6, Von Scheve-Chigorin, Monte Carlo 1901)

4.exf3 e6 5.c3 ♙d6 6.♙g3 ♘c6 7.♙b5 ♘e7 8.♘d2 0-0 9.0-0 e5 with an easy game in Wirthensohn-Miralles, Switzerland 1998.

– 3.♘bd2 ♘d7 (3...♘f6) 4.e4 e6 5.♙e2 dxe4 6.♘e4 ♘gf6 7.♚d3 c6, 4th match game, Zukertort-Blackburne, London 1887.

### 3...♙xf3

Here 3...♘c6 transposes to a line from the Chigorin Defence. This already proves that 3.c4 is not the most critical move. I refer interested readers to the New In Chess publication on the Chigorin Defence by Morozevich. Here we will only investigate an independent set-up for Black.

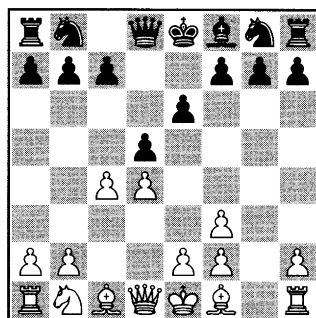
### 4.gxf3

Unnatural is 4.exf3 when Black has no problems:

– 4...dxc4 5.♙xc4 e6 6.0-0 (6.♚b3 ♘c6 7.♚xb7 ♙b4+ 8.♘c3 ♘ge7 with compensation) 6...♘f6 (6...c6) 7.♘c3 (7.♚b3) 7...c6 8.♘e4 ♙e7 9.♙f4 0-0 10.♚d3 ♘d5 11.♙g3 a5 12.a3 f5 with a clear edge in Yakushev-Kaurdakov, Novosibirsk 2001.

– 4...e6 5.cxd5 (5.♚b3 ♘c6!) 5...exd5 6.♚b3 ♚e7+! 7.♙e3 ♚b4+ 8.♘c3 ♚xb3 9.axb3 c6 10.♙f4 ♘d7 11.♘d2 ♙b4 12.♘c2 ♘e7 and Black was already better in Alawieh-Amura, France 2002/03.

### 4...e6



4...♘c6 is again a 'regular' Chigorin Defence.

The 6th match game Steinitz-Chigorin, World Championship Havana 1889, saw 4...dxc4 5.e4?! e5! 6.dxe5 ♚xd1+ 7.♘xd1 ♘c6 8.f4 ♚d8+! 9.♙d2 ♙c5 and Black was fine. However, White should play 5.e3!.

A reasonable alternative for the text is 4...c6 and now:

– 5.♚b3 ♚d7 6.♘c3 e6 7.e4 ♘f6 8.cxd5 cxd5 9.e5 ♘h5 10.f4 g6 11.♙e3 ♘g7! 12.♙d3 ♘c6 13.♖c1 ♙e7 14.♘a4 ♘f5 15.♙xf5 gxf5 16.♖g1 0-0-0 17.♘c5 ♙xc5 18.♖xc5 ♖h8 gave Black a comfortable game in A.Friedman-Rubenchik, Somerset 1992.

– 5.e4 dxc4 (5...dxe4 6.fxe4 e5) 6.♙xc4 e6 7.♘c3 ♘d7 8.♙e3 ♘gf6 9.a4 ♚a5 10.♖g1 g6 11.♖g5 ♚c7 12.♘e2 ♚xh2 13.♖g1 ♚c7 14.♖c1 ♙e7 15.♚b3 ♘h5 and White did not have enough for the pawn in Pakleza-Stryjecki, Cracow 2003.

– 5.e3 e6 6.♘c3 ♘f6 7.♚b3 ♚b6 8.c5 ♚c7 (8...♚xb3 9.axb3 with b4-b5 to follow) 9.f4 ♘bd7 10.♙g2 g6 11.♙d2 ♙g7 12.0-0 0-0 13.♚c2 and draw agreed in Schinzel-Skrobek, Lodz ch-POL 1980.

### 5.♘c3

5.cxd5 ♚xd5?! was played in the fourth game of the World Championship's match Steinitz-Chigorin, Havana 1889. I would prefer 5...exd5 not fearing 6.♚b3 when, ac-



cording to Euwe, White is better, but it seems to me that 6...♘c6 is an adequate response.

### 5...♘f6

Again Black can simply play 5...c6. White gains nothing after 6.♖b3 ♘b6 7.c5 ♖xb3 (but not 7...♗c7 8.♙f4 ♗xf4? – 8...♗c8 – 9.♖xb7 ♗xd4 10.♗xa8 ♖b4 11.e3! and now 11...♙xc5 12.♙b5! or 11...♗xb2? 12.♖b1 ♖xc3+ 13.♙d1 winning) 8.axb3 ♘a6! 9.e3 ♘c7 10.♙d2 (10.b4 a6) 10...f5 11.♙d3 ♘f6 12.♙e2 g6 13.b4 a6 14.f4 ♙e7 ½-½, A.Gonzalez-J.Rodriguez, Spain 1999.

### 6.cxd5 exd5 7.♙g5

Here 7.♖b3 is again met by 7...♘c6.

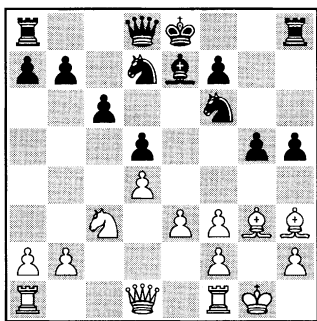
### 7...c6 8.e3 ♘bd7

The structure resembles the Queen's Gambit Exchange Variation. Obviously, Black is fine having succeeded in playing ...♙g4xf3.

### 9.♙h3 ♙e7 10.0-0

Now Black may simply castle with a satisfactory game, but Arkell embarks on a more ambitious plan.

### 10...h6 11.♙h4 g5!? 12.♙g3 h5



### 13.e4

In case of 13.♙f5 Black should not play 13...h4 14.♙e5, but simply 13...♗g8.

### 13...dxe4

Also interesting is 13...g4.

### 14.fxex4 h4 15.♙e5 ♘xe5 16.dxe5 ♘h5 17.♗g4 ♗c7 18.♘e2 ♗xe5

Black is safe pawn up and positionally better

since White cannot play 19.♗d7+ ♙f8 20.♖xb7? ♙d6 21.f4 ♙c5+ 22.♙h1 ♗xe4+ 23.♙g2 ♗xe2 24.♗xa8+ ♙g7 winning.

### 19.f4 gxf4

19...♗xe4! threatening 20...♙c5+ was much stronger. Black should win easily.

### 20.♘xf4 ♘xf4

Again not the best move. 20...♘f6 to play ...♗g8 and to take on e4 was excellent.

### 21.♗xf4 ♗g5 22.♖af1 ♗g8 23.♙h1 ♗xg4 24.♙xg4 ♗g5 25.h3 f6

Black has a safe but small edge. The game eventually ended in a draw on move 44.

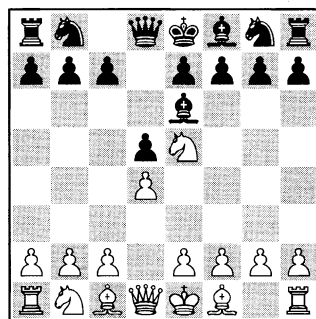
Now we move on to 3.♘e5 when Black's most natural responses are 3...♙h5 and 3...♙f5. However, completely in the SOS spirit is Gurgenzidze's and Tseitlin's 3...♙e6!?. So let's have a quick look at this first.

□ Arshak Petrosian

■ Mikhail Tseitlin

Telavi 1982

### 1.♘f3 d5 2.d4 ♙g4 3.♘e5 ♙e6



Ultimate provocation or tongue-in-cheek? Well, admittedly Black plays for a shock effect, but there are some technical points connected to his last move as well. The bishop presents no target on e6, while the white knight has been lured forward (and may be



exchanged after a future ... $\text{d7}$ ).

#### 4.c4 $\text{d7}$

The point of Black's set-up.

#### 5.cxd5

In the previous round Yermolinsky played 5.. $\text{f4}$  and after 5.. $\text{dxe5}$  6.. $\text{xe5 dxc4}$  7.. $\text{c3 c6}$  8.. $\text{e4 f6}$  9.. $\text{f4 f7}$  10.. $\text{d5 e5!}$  11.. $\text{e3 (11.dxe6 xd1+ 12.fxd1 xe6 with an extra pawn) 11...b4 12.xc4 d7}$  Black was fully equal. There followed: 13.. $\text{b3 xc3+}$  14.. $\text{bxc3 b5}$  15.. $\text{e2 a6}$  16.. $\text{d1 0-0}$  17.. $\text{c5 e8}$  18.. $\text{0-0 cxd5}$  19.. $\text{xe7 f7}$  20.. $\text{exd5}$  and now instead of 20.. $\text{d6}$  (when 21.. $\text{a4!}$  was strong) Black should have played 20.. $\text{f7}$  when 21.. $\text{a4}$  can be met by 21.. $\text{f8}$ , Yermolinsky-Gurgenidze, Telavi 1982.

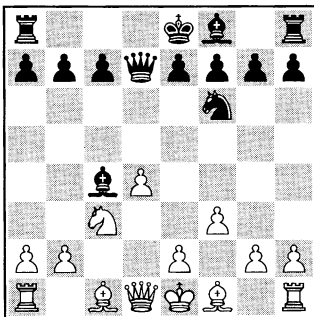
#### 5... $\text{xd5}$ 6.. $\text{xd7}$

Gurgenidze repeated the whole line in the 21st century. He was run over after 6.. $\text{a4!}$ ? c6 7.. $\text{c3 dgf6}$  (7.. $\text{dxe5}$  8.. $\text{dxe5 e6}$ ; 7.. $\text{b6}$  8.. $\text{c2 f6}$  9.. $\text{xd5 cxd5}$ ) 8.. $\text{c2!}$ ? g6 9.. $\text{e4 e6}$  10.. $\text{e2 dxe5}$  11.. $\text{dxe5 d7}$  12.. $\text{f4 f5??}$  13.. $\text{exf5}$  and only here did Black realize that he had overlooked 13.. $\text{xf5}$  14.. $\text{xf5! gxf5}$  15.. $\text{h5 mate!}$  Kacheishvili-Gurgenidze, Georgian Championship, Tbilisi 2000.

#### 6.. $\text{xd7}$ 7.. $\text{c3}$ $\text{f6}$ 8.f3

White has nothing after 8.. $\text{xd5 xd5}$ .

#### 8... $\text{c4!}$ ?



9.. $\text{e4 xf1}$  10.. $\text{xf1 e6}$  11.. $\text{e3 e7}$   
12.. $\text{b3 0-0}$

Black has a normal position and can be satisfied with the outcome of his experiment.

#### 13.0-0 a5

Sending the pawn forward, which is normal considering that both sides have castled on opposite wings.

#### 14.d5 exd5 15.. $\text{xd5 dxd5}$ 16.. $\text{xb7}$

Gaining a pawn but opening a file for the opponent. 16.. $\text{xd5}$  with a slight edge was safer.

#### 16... $\text{ab8}$ 17.. $\text{xd5 d6}$ 18.. $\text{f6}$

Not 18.. $\text{e5 f5}$ .

#### 18... $\text{b5}$ 19.. $\text{d3 f8}$ 20.. $\text{b1 e6}$

In return for the pawn, Black has the initiative and attacking chances.

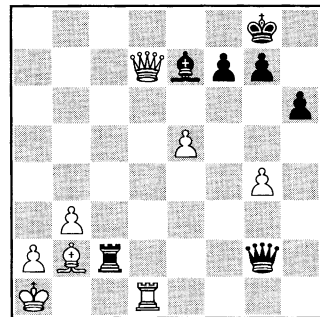
#### 21.f4 f4 22.e5 f8 23.. $\text{d7 h6}$ 24.. $\text{xc7 xh2}$ 25.. $\text{c1 h5}$ 26.. $\text{fd2 f5+}$ 27.. $\text{a1 b7}$

Stronger is 27.. $\text{c8!}$ ? when 28.. $\text{xa5??}$  (28.. $\text{d7 xf4}$ ) 28.. $\text{fbc4}$  would win on the spot!

#### 28.. $\text{xa5 xf4}$ 29.. $\text{d5 e4}$ 30.. $\text{d8 c6}$ 31.. $\text{xb8 xb8}$ 32.. $\text{d5 g6}$ 33.. $\text{b3 h6}$ 34.. $\text{b2 e7}$ 35.. $\text{f3 c8}$ 36.. $\text{g4 c2}$ 37.. $\text{f5 c6}$ 38.. $\text{d7}$

Or 38.. $\text{f1 g2}$  39.. $\text{xf7+ h8}$  40.. $\text{c1! xc1+}$  41.. $\text{xc1 h1}$  42.. $\text{c4 a3}$  43.. $\text{b1 e1}$  with a curious bind.

#### 38... $\text{g2}$



#### 39.. $\text{xe7}$

White can draw with 39.. $\text{e8+ h7}$



(39...♙f8 40.e6=) 40.♖xf7 ♜xb2 41.♗f5+ with a perpetual.

In case of 39.♜c1 Black again has 39...♜xc1+ (39...♜xb2 40.♜c8+ ♙f8 41.♜xf8+) 40.♙xc1 ♖g1 41.♙b1 ♙a3 when White still has to untangle himself, but how?

**39...♜xb2 40.♖d8+ ♙h7 41.♖d3+ g6 42.♖a6 ♜f2**

Black is much better due to the unsafe position of White's king. The next move is a blunder that decides the game.

**43.b4? ♖g3! 44.♙b1 ♖c3 0-1**

Let us investigate 3...♙f5 (and 3...♙h5) by means of the following spectacular game.

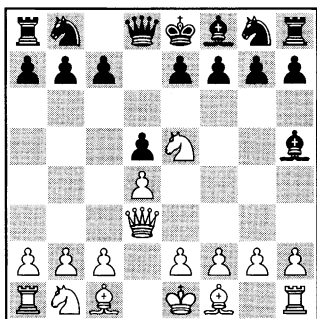
□ **Christian Seel**

■ **Dirk Topolewski**

Germany Bundesliga B 2002/03

**1.♟f3 d5 2.d4 ♙g4 3.♞e5 ♙f5**

Here 3...♙h5 4.♖d3



is a double attack known from the second World Championship's match game Steinitz-Chigorin, Havana 1889. Natural moves now fail: 4...♞d7 5.♖b5!; and 4...c6 5.♖h3! ♞f6 6.g4 ♙g6 7.♞xg6 fxg6±.

However, Black can defend with 4...♖c8 as played by Chigorin. After 5.c4 f6 6.♞f3 (6.g4!? fxe5 7.gxh5 e4? – 7...dxc4 – 8.♖b3

c6 9.♙h3! and White was already winning in Solozhenkin-Rodkin, Chigorin(!) Memorial 2004) 6...e6 7.♞c3 ♙g6 8.♖d1 c6 White had nothing special.

Perhaps White should therefore just prefer 4.c4 f6 5.g4!? fxe5 6.gxh5 exd4 (6...dxc4) 7.♙g2 ♞f6 8.cxd5, Andersson-Van Riemsdijk, Rio de Janeiro 1985.

**4.c4**

This natural move is best.

– White merely weakens his position with 4.g4, when Black should play 4...♙c8! (4...♙e4 5.f3 f6 6.fxe4 fxe5 7.dxe5 is interesting from a historical point of view. Owen-Blackburne, Bradford 1888) 5.g5 ♙f5 6.c4 e6 7.♞c3 (7.♖b3 ♞c6) 7...♞e7 8.♙g2 ♞d7 9.cxd5 ♞xd5 10.♞xd7 ♖xd7 11.e4 ♞xc3 12.bxc3 ♙g6 with an interesting game in Lobron-Hodgson, Haifa 1989. White centre and space is balanced by Black's solid set-up who will aim to demonstrate that White has weakened his position with g4-g5.

– 4.g3 ♞d7 5.♞d3 e6 6.♙g2 ♞gf6 7.♞d2 c6 8.c3 ♙d6 9.♞f3 h6 10.0-0 a5 is rock-solid. Alonso-Hergott, Cienfuegos 1996.

– 4.♙f4 e6 5.e3 ♞d7 6.♞d3 ♙xd3 7.♖xd3 c6 8.♞xd7 ♖xd7 9.♞d2 ♞f6 10.h3 ♙d6 11.♙xd6 ♖xd6 12.0-0 e5 13.dxe5 ♖xe5 14.♖d4 ♖xd4 15.exd4 and domestic peace was guaranteed in this game between husband and wife. Botsari-Miladinovic, Montecatini Terme 1998.

**4...f6**

Likely to transpose is 4...c6 5.♞c3 f6 (not 5...e6? 6.cxd5! exd5 7.e4 dxe4 8.♖b3, or 6...cxd5 7.e4) 6.♞f3 e6. For example: 7.cxd5 (7.♖b3 ♖b6) 7...exd5 8.e3 ♙d6 9.♙d3 ♙xd3 10.♖xd3 and now Black should play 10...♞e7 rather than 10...♙h6? 11.e4! dxe4 12.♖xe4+ ♙d7 (12...♖e7 13.♙hx6) 13.0-0 ♖e7 14.♙hx6 Medic-Mravunac, Velika Gorica 2006.

**5.♞f3 c6**



Here 5...e6 keeps the option of playing ...dxc6. After 6.dxc3, 6...c6 transposes to Kasparov-Short below. Instead Black can also try 6...dxc6 when Black has done well in practice:

– 7.dh4 g4 8.h3 gh5 9.cxd5 exd5 10.g4 gf7 11.g2 d7 12.f5 ge7 13.dxe7 xe7 14.f4 g5 15.g3 h5 16.e3 0-0-0 17.c1 hxg4 18.hxg4 xh1+ 19.xh1 h8 20.f3 d6 with an edge in Cuartas-Gild. Garcia, Cali 2001.

– 7.cxd5 exd5 8.f4 and now Black should go all-out with 8...g5 9.g3 h5 10.h3 h4 (10...d6 11.xd6 xxd6 12.e3 ge7 ½-½ Sonntag-Wengenroth, Germany 2003/04) 11.h2 d6 12.e3 ge7 13.e2 xh2 14.xh2 d6 15.a3 0-0-0 16.a4 b8 17.b4 c8 18.0-0 b6 19.b3 d8g8 20.f1c1 e6 21.b5 e7 22.c5 f5 23.d1 g4 and Black's attack was a lot quicker in Drasko-Karner, Tallinn 1985.

### 6.cxd5?!

For 6.dxc3 see the next game.

### 6...cxd5 7.b3

White misplayed the opening in F.Lee-Blackburne, Bradford 1890, with 7.dxc3 e6 8.b3 d7 9.dh4 g4 10.e3 dxc6 11.a3 c8 12.d2 d6 13.a4 ge7 14.h3 gh5 15.g4 gf7 16.d3 0-0 17.dxc5 xc5 18.dxc5 e5 and Black(burne) was much better.

### 7...dxc6!?

The safe move is 7...d7.

### 8.dxc3

Or 8.xb7 xc8!? 9.xc8+ (9.b3 dxd4!; 9.b5 b8 10.a4 b4 11.d1 dxd4 12.dxd4 xd4 13.xd4 xc1+ 14.d1 xb2 15.d2 e5) 9...xc8 10.d2 e6 with a certain amount of compensation.

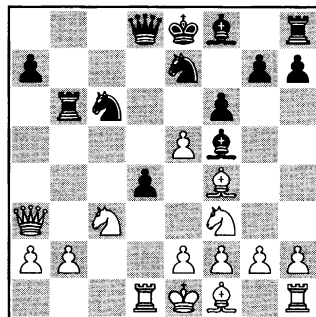
### 8...e6 9.xb7?! dge7 10.f4

If 10.b3 then 10...b8 with full compensation.

10...e5! 11.dxe5 b8 12.a6 b6 13.a3

Not 13.a4? b4.

### 13...d4 14.d1



### 14...c2

Black could win immediately with 14...d5! 15.a4 dxc3 16.bxc3 (16.e4 b4!) 16...dxc3! 17.xd8+ xd8 and White's queen is trapped!

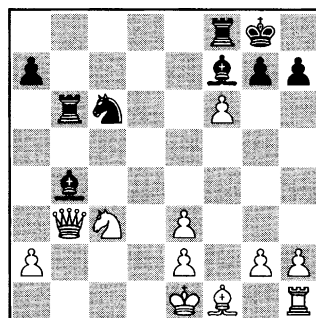
### 15.dxd4!? dxd4 16.xd4 xd4 17.e3

This was the point of White's 15th move. Black has prepared a stunning reply.

### 17...xe3!? 18.fxe3 dxc6

White's next moves are forced.

### 19.b4 xb4 20.b2 g6 21.exf6 0-0 22.b3+ f7



### 23.b2c

And now moves were repeated after

23...g6 24.b3+ f7 25.b2 g6 ½-½



However, your silicon friend will point out that Black wins on points following 23...♙e5 when the pin along the c-file (...♞c8) is one of the deciding factors.

Let us end this chapter with Nigel Short beating Garry Kasparov nearly twenty years ago in a London discotheque. No, they did not dance their legs down to their knees; they played an exhibition match of six rapid games (25 minutes per person).

Overall victory (4-2) was for Kasparov, but the third game was a sweet success for Short.

□ Garry Kasparov

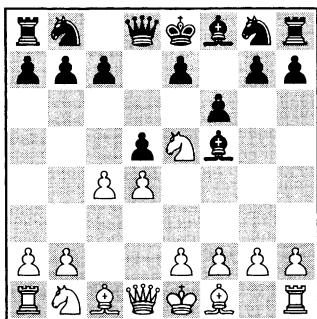
■ Nigel Short

London m-3 1987

### 1.♟f3 d5 2.d4 ♙g4

Short has often left the well-trodden paths against Kasparov to avoid his phenomenal preparation.

### 3.♙e5 ♙f5 4.c4 f6



### 5.♟f3 c6 6.♙c3

White can also attack b7 with 6.♞b3 a theme that is quite common in all 1.d4 openings where Black develops his light-squared bishop early-on in the game (think of the Slav for instance): 6...♞d7 7.♙c3 e6 8.e3 ♙g4 9.♙e2. Hodgson now comes up

with a remarkable idea. He first exchanges the bishop for the knight before opting for a Stonewall (where knights are often stronger than bishops): 9...♙xf3! 10.♙xf3 f5 11.♙h5+! 12.g6 12.♙e2 ♟f6 13.f3 ♙g7 14.♙d2 0-0 15.0-0 ♙e8 16.♞ad1 ♙d6 17.c5 ♟f7 (the knight is well-placed here supporting either ...e6-e5 or ...g6-g5) 18.♞h1 ♞c7 (the immediate 18...e5 is met by 19.dxe5 ♙xe5 20.e4. Now Black is ready for the central push) 19.f4 b6 20.♙a4 ♙d7 21.♞c2 b5 22.♙c3 ♟f6 (22...a5) 23.b4 a5 24.bxa5 ♞xa5 25.a4 b4 26.♙a2 ♞fa8 27.♙xb4 ♞xa4 28.♞b1 ♙e4 and Black is slightly better. The game ended in a draw after a long fight. Gurevich-Hodgson, Moscow 1987.

### 6...e6 7.g3!?

Kasparov opts for a fianchetto, more common is 7.e3. Nothing is gained by 7.♙h4 ♙g4 8.h3 ♙h5 9.g4 ♙f7.

### 7...♙b4 8.♙g2 ♟e7 9.0-0 0-0

White has sufficient compensation after 9...dxc4 10.e4 ♙g4.

### 10.♞b3 a5 11.a3 ♙xc3 12.bxc3

If 12.♞xc3 then 12...a4 or 12...♙e4 13.♙h3 (13.b3 a4) 13...♙f5 and Black is not afraid of 14.g4 ♙e4 15.g5 ♙f5. Nothing is gained by taking on b7: 12.♞xb7 ♙d7 13.bxc3 ♞b8 14.♞a6 ♞a8 15.♞b7 ♞b8.

### 12...♙d7 13.♙d2 a4 14.♞a2

A little better looks 14.♞b4.

### 14...♙g6 15.e4 ♙f7

Black's position may look passive, but it actually holds a lot of potential. He is playing for a full blockade on the light squares.

### 16.♞b1 ♞b8 17.♞c2 b5! 18.cxd5

18.c5 e5 and Black is not worse.

### 18...cxd5 19.♞d3 ♞a5

Pawn c3 is a target, as well as the c4-square.

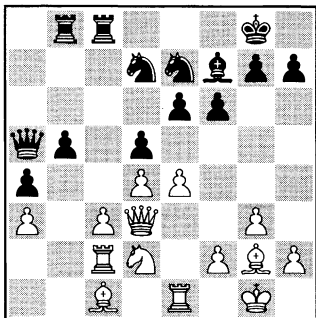
### 20.♞e1 ♞fc8 21.♞b4 ♙c6 22.♞b2 ♟e7

Inviting a repetition, but Kasparov decides to play (he was 2-0 up in the match at this stage).

### 23.♞c2?!



This allows Short to manoeuvre his knight to c4 via b6.



**23...d6 24.h4 25.b7 26.b2! 27.c4**

It is not in Black's favour to open the position with 26...xc3 27.xb5 xb5 28.xb5.

**27.b4 c7**

Threatening 28...xa3.

**28.xc4 xc4 29.d2 c6 30.e5 f5 31.f1 h5 32.e3 h6! 33.eb1**

Accepting the exchange sacrifice with 33.xc4 dxc4 favours Black. The prospects of Black's bishop are rather better than those of its opposite counterpart, not to mention the knight which will hop to d5 with pleasure.

**33...f7 34.b2 g8 35.f3**

Kasparov keeps on wisely neglecting the rook on offer, and slowly improves his position.

**35...a6 36.b1 c6 37.xc4 dxc4 37...xb4 38.xb5 xb5** is very slightly better for White.

**38.b2 e7 39.d5!**

This was Kasparov's idea when accepting the exchange at last.

**39...xd5 40.c5 xf3 41.xb5 c7**

**42.b8+ h7 43.f8**

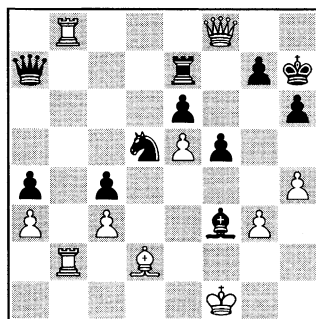
43.f2 was indicated at the time as an improvement.

**43...a7+ 44.f1 e7! 45.b2?**

Kasparov makes a mistake. He demonstrated some impressive lines after the game following 45.b7. For instance: 45...xb7 46.g8+ g6 47.xe6+ f6! 48.xb7 xb7 (48...g2+ 49.e2 f3+ is a draw) 49.exf6 e4 draws.

However, Black wins after 45...e3+! 46.xe3 (46.e1 xb7 47.g8+ g6 48.xe6+ h5+) 46...xe3 47.b2 d3+! 48.g1 xc3 and wins.

The correct defence was 45.e1!.



Now think of the famous Short-Timman game (Tilburg 1991) where Short played the remarkable manoeuvre h2-g3-h4-g5-h6. Yes, here he played:

**45...g6! 46.c1**

Stronger was 46.e8.

**46...h5**

Simply planning to invade via g4.

**47.a8**

Again 47.e8, but 47.c8 xc3 48.xc4 e4 49.f4 d7 just loses.

**47...c5 48.c8? xa3! 49.g4+ xg4 50.xc4 a1**

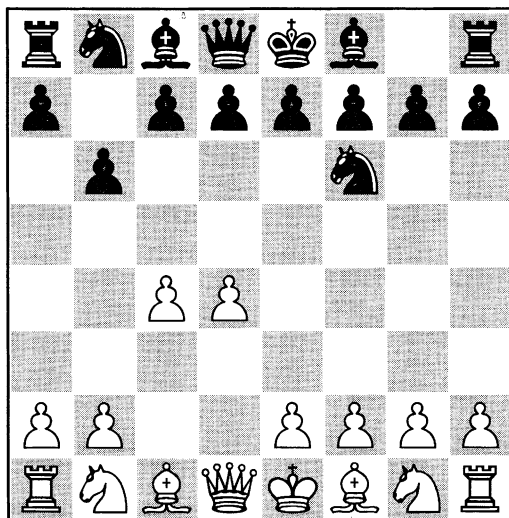
And Kasparov resigned.



## CHAPTER 11

*Arthur Kogan*

# The Queen's Grünfeld Line (Part I)



1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6

I started to play this line in 1996. And, although I 'invented' it all by myself, honesty compels me to say that it has quite a pedigree. World Champions Alekhine and Fischer have played it occasionally, just like creative GMs such as Grünfeld, Nimzowitsch, Bronstein, Tolush and Larsen!

I would call this line 'the Queen's Grünfeld line'. The point is to play a kind of Queen's Indian, but trying to do without the move ...e6. This allows Black some extra options: for example, a double fianchetto, sometimes even transposing to a type of Grünfeld position, or even playing a direct central pawn break with ...e5 in some lines.

It's true that often Black can transpose to

Queen's Indian main lines, but I will mainly consider the plans that are based on a quick ...d5 (similar to the Grünfeld).

While it is hard to point out a clear way for White to get an easy and safe advantage, I should like to note that Black should never forget about the fight for the centre (as even a few GMs did).

Considering that 1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6 is a full-size repertoire for Black we will divide the material in two parts:

Part I: 3.♘c3 (and other moves)

Part II: 3.♘f3

So, for the latter knight move see the next chapter.



□ Aaron Nimzowitsch

■ Frank Marshall

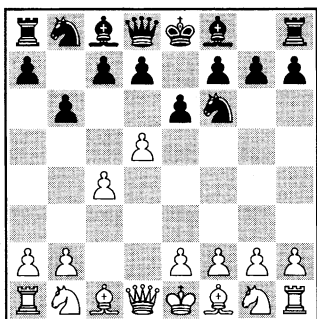
Bad Kissingen 1928

### 1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6 3.♙c3

This seems to be the most logical move, fighting for the centre.

● 3.d5?! is also critical, trying to punish Black for not playing ...e6. Now the Grünfeld inventor played a creative game against another very famous GM: 3...♙b7 4.g3 e5 5.♙g2 ♙b4+ 6.♘d2 0-0 7.e4 ♘a6 8.a3 ♙d6 9.b4 c6 unclear, Rubinstein-Grünfeld, Breslau 1925.

However, I think Black has good chances to break the centre and get a quick initiative with 3...e6!



Now 4.♘c3 ♙b4 is a nice Nimzo-Indian, where White is already under pressure!

If 4.f3 then 4...exd5 (not 4...c6 5.d6 ♘a6 6.♖d4; but 4...exd5 5.cxd5 ♙c5 6.e3 ♖e7 is possible) 5.cxd5 ♙b4+ 6.♘c3 0-0 7.e4 ♘h5!? seems risky for White. 8...♗h4 is the threat exploiting White's lack of development. His centre might be counter-attacked very soon by the ...f5 or ...c6 breaks.

The main move is perhaps 4.a3!? preventing ...♙b4, when Black has two options:

– 4...♙a6!? 5.e3 exd5 6.cxd5 ♘xf1 7.♙xf1 ♙d6 is very OK for Black. He will probably develop his knight from b8 to c5 (pushing a5 might help to fix it there), and while White is

solving his development and ♙f1 problems, Black will surely get at least enough counterplay against the d5 pawn.

– 4...exd5 5.cxd5 ♙c5!? is fascinating too. Play might continue 6.b4 (6.♘c3 0-0 7.b4 ♙d6 8.♘f3 ♙b7⇒) and now 6...♘e4 7.e3 ♙d6 (not 7...♗f6?! 8.♖c2! ♘xf2 9.♙b2 which seems better for White), or the adventurous 6...♘xf2+!? 7.♙xf2 ♘e4+ 8.♙f3! (8.♙e3 f5!) 8...♗f6+9.♙xe4 ♖xa1 10.♙f4.

● On 3.f3!? I would recommend the interesting 3...♙c6! (3...e5!? 4.dxe5 ♘h5 5.♘h3!±, Novikov-Kogan Antwerp 1996) with ...e5 coming. It seems like a good idea to complicate matters for White! 4.d5 (4.e4 e5 5.d5 ♘d4 6.♘e2 ♙c5) 4...♘e5 5.e4 e6 and White's king might be in danger soon. In any case it looks unpleasant for White!

● On 3.e3 the best reaction is 3...♙b7 4.♘f3 e6 (or 4...d5!? 5.cxd5 ♘xd5 6.♘e5 e6), since the e3 Queen's Indian line is really not so dangerous.

### 3...♙b7 4.♙g5

This is a logical approach.

On 4.a3 I would recommend 4...d5!? (4...e6 5.♘f3 is a famous Queen's Indian line).

In case of 4.♘f3 it is positionally wrong to play 4...c5?!, but it was played by such a strong GM as Tartakower and even with success! (4...d5!? is my recommendation, and it transposes to the next chapter the game Mohandesi-Kogan) 5.d5 d6 6.e4 ♘bd7 7.♙d3 (the problem is that ♙b7 is really a 'sad piece' restricted by d5, a well defended pawn) 7...g6 8.b3?! ♙g7 9.♙b2 0-0 10.0-0 e6 11.dxe6? (11.♖d2±) 11...fxe6 12.♖c2 ♘h5 13.♙fe1 ♙xf3! 14.gxf3 ♘f4+ 15.♙f1 ♖g5+ 16.♙h1 ♖h5 17.♙e3 ♙d4 18.♙ae1 ♘e5 (now you can see why I couldn't avoid showing you this game) 19.♖d1 ♙f8 20.♙c1 d5 21.cxd5 exd5 22.♘b1 ♙xe3 23.fxe3 ♘xf3 24.♙e2 ♘xe2 25.♖xe2 ♘xh2, 0-1 Matisons-Tartakower, Debrecen 1925.

### 4...e6 5.♖c2



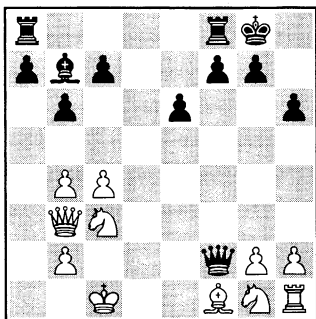
Another option is: 5.e4 h6 6.♙xf6 ♖xf6 7.♘f3 ♙b4 – Black's piece activity compensates White's central control – 8.♙d3 c5!? 9.0-0 cxd4 10.♘b5 ♙a6 11.a3 ♙e7 12.♘fxd4 ♘c5! 13.♙c2 0-0 14.♘c3 d6 with decent play in Stahlberg-Tartakower, Kemer 1937.

Note that 5.♘f3 is a Queen's Indian or Nimzo line.

**5...h6 6.♙h4 ♙e7 7.e4 0-0 8.e5**

On 8.0-0, 8...c5! is well-timed, since if 9.d5? (9.♘f3 cxd4 10.♘xd4 ♘c6) then 9...♘xd5! is strong.

**8...♘d5! 9.♙g3 ♘b4 10.♖b3 d5 11.exd6 ♙xd6 12.0-0-0 ♘8c6 13.♙xd6 ♖xd6 14.a3 ♘xd4! 15.♖xd4 ♖xd4 16.axb4 ♖xf2**



A real masterpiece by Marshall who is winning by now. He finishes the game in an elegant way!

**17.♖d1 ♖fd8 18.♖e2 ♖f4+ 19.♙c2 a5! 20.bxa5 ♖xa5 21.♘f3 ♖a1 22.♙b3 b5! 23.♖e5 bxc4+ 24.♙b4 ♖c1 25.♘b5 c5+!** **0-1**

□ Max Euwe

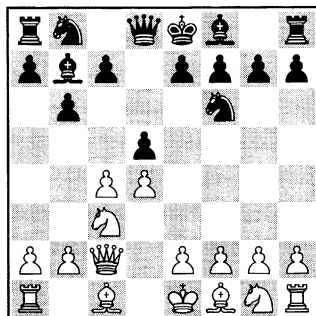
■ Alexander Alekhine

Budapest 1921

**1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6 3.♘c3 ♙b7 4.♖c2**

With this move White is fighting for control over the e4-square.

**4...d5**



In the past many strong players liked the anti-positional, provocative move 4...♘c6?! 5.♘f3 (5.d5 ♘b4 6.♖d1 a5 7.e4 e5 8.g3 g6 9.♙g2 ♙g7 10.♘ge2 0-0 11.0-0 d6 12.f4±, Sämisch-Nimzowitsch, Karlsbad 1923) 5...e6 6.e4 e5 7.dxe5 ♘g4 8.♙g5 ♙e7 9.♙f4 ♙c5 10.♙g3±, Teichmann-Alekhine, Berlin 1921.

**5.cxd5**

White was slightly better in Grünfeld-Réti, Moscow 1925, after 5.♘f3 g6 6.♙f4 ♙g7 7.e3 0-0 8.h3 ♘bd7 9.♖d1 c5 10.dxc5 ♘xc5 11.♙e2 ♖c8 12.0-0. However, Black could also have gone for 5...e6.

**5...♘d5 6.e4**

Nothing brings 6.♘d5 ♙xd5 7.e4 ♙b7 8.♘f3 e6 9.♙b5+ c6 10.♙d3 ♙b4+ 11.♙d2 ♙xd2+ 12.♖xd2 ♘d7 13.e5?! c5, Varga-Izsak, Budapest 1995.

**6...♘xc3 7.bxc3**

Here Black can again take a risk and play **7...e5!?**

Safer is 7...e6 or 7...g6.

**8.dxe5**

Here are some alternatives:

– 8.♘f3 exd4 9.♙c4 (9...♙c5+!?) 9...♘c6 (9...♖e7!?) 10.0-0 d3 11.♙xd3 ♙c5 12.e5 and White has the initiative, Zilberstein-Bronstein, Russian Championship, Baku 1972.

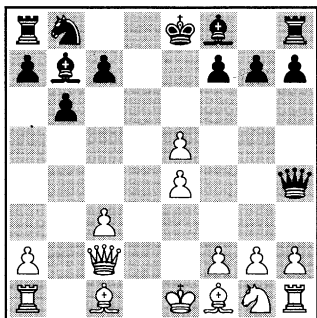


– 8.d5 a6 (8...c6!?) 9.♘f3 ♘d7 10.♖a4 ♕d6 11.♕g5 f6 12.♗e3 0-0 and Black was fine, Labarthe-Horn, Geneva 1990.

– 8.♗b5+!? c6 9.♗c4 exd4 10.♘f3 with compensation.

**8...♖h4!**

After this powerful queen move Black obtains enough compensation.



**9.♗b5+**

Returning the pawn with 9.♘f3 brings nothing after 9...♖xe4+ 10.♖xe4 ♕xe4 11.♗c4 ♘c6 12.0-0 0-0-0 13.♞e1 ♕d5 14.♗a6+ ♗b8 15.♕g5 ♕e7 with equality.

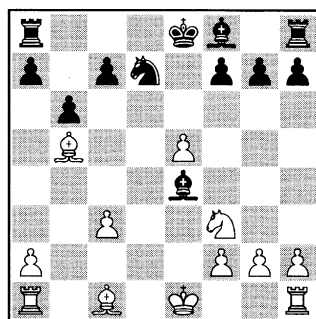
Protecting the pawn does not lead to an advantage either:

9.♗d3 ♘d7 (in case of 9...♗c5 10.♘f3 ♖g4 11.0-0 0-0, it seems that Black has got compensation for White's extra doubled pawn) 10.♘f3 ♖h5 11.♕g5!? (11.♗f4 0-0-0 with compensation; 11.0-0 ♘xe5 12.♘xe5 ♖xe5 13.♗e3 0-0-0 is unclear) 11...h6 12.e6! ♘c5 (12...fxe6 13.e5 ♗f7 14.♗e4±) 13.exf7+ ♖xf7 and Black has enough compensation with ...0-0-0 coming and nice play on the open files.

**9...♘d7 10.♘f3**

Black was somewhat better after 10.♗xd7+ ♗xd7 11.♖d3+ ♗c8 12.♖h3+ ♖xh3 13.♘h3 ♕xe4 14.0-0 h6!, M.Makogonov-Freiman, Semi-final Russian Championship, Odessa 1929.

**10...♖xe4+ 11.♖xe4 ♕xe4**



**12.♘g5**

This move backfires after Alekhine's accurate 13th move. After 12.0-0 Black should play 12...c6 (12...0-0-0 13.♘g5 ♕g6 14.e6 was better for White in Danner-Horn, Biel 1990; White holds the initiative in the ending after 12...a6 13.♗c4 b5 14.♕xf7+ ♗xf7 15.♘g5+ ♗g6 16.♘xe4 ♘xe5 17.f4) 13.♗c4 (13.♗e2 ♘c5 14.♗e3 ♘a4) 13...♞d8 14.♞d1 ♕e7 15.♗f4 ♘c5 16.♘d4 ♘a4! when he has sufficient counterplay.

**12...♗xg2 13.♞g1 c6! 14.♞xg2?**

White had to try 14.e6! when 14...fxe6 15.♗e2 ♕d5 16.c4 spells trouble for Black, who should have gone for the unclear 14...♘e5.

**14...cxb5 15.e6 fxe6 16.♘xe6 ♗f7** Black is just better. The rest is not interesting for our purpose. **17.♘c7 ♞c8 18.♘xb5 a6 19.♘d4 ♞xc3 20.♗b2 ♞c5 21.♞d1 ♞d5 22.♞d3 ♘e5 23.♞b3 ♗b4+ 24.♗f1 ♕c5 25.♗f5 ♞hd8 26.♞xg7+ ♗f6 27.♞f3 ♞d2 28.♘d6+ ♗e6 29.♗xe5 ♗xd6 30.♗xd6 ♞8xd6 31.♞a3 ♞b2 0-1**

□ Per Andreasen

■ Erik Pedersen

Denmark 1988

**1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6 3.♘c3 ♗b7 4.d5!?**

White is staking a claim for more space and blocking the diagonal for the bishop.



#### 4...e6

So, Black is forced to fight for the centre and to free the way for his bishop on b7!

#### 5.a3!?

A prophylactic move directed against ♖b4, similar to the Queen's Indian. White can also allow the pin with the direct 5.e4 ♖b4 6.♗d3. Now Black needs to improve upon 6...exd5 7.cxd5 (7.exd5 ♗xc3+ 8.bxc3 0-0 9.♗e2 ♗a6) 7...0-0 8.♗f3 ♖e8 9.0-0 ♗xc3 10.bxc3 d6 (10...♗xe4 11.♗xe4 ♖xe4 12.♖d3 ♖e7 13.♗g5 ♖h4 14.♗f4!) 11.♖e1±, as in L.Gomez-Jerez Perez, Barcelona 1996.

I would recommend the interesting gambit 6...b5!?. For example: 7.cxb5 (after 7.♗e2 bxc4 8.♗xc4 ♗xe4 9.♖d4 ♗f6 10.0-0 0-0 11.♗g5 ♗e7 White's compensation might be not enough) 7...exd5 8.e5 d4! 9.exf6 ♖xf6 10.♖e2+ ♗f8 11.♗f3 ♗xf3 12.gxf3 dxc3 13.0-0 a6!. In this very complex position Black seems to have good chances.

#### 5...♗d6

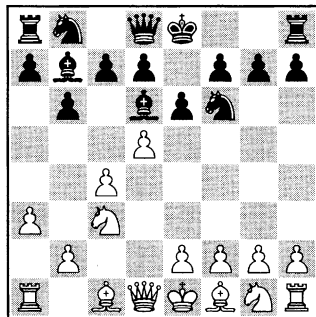
I like this move. The bishop intends to go to e5 at some stage, increasing the pressure on d5 by attacking the c3-knight.

5...♗e7 leads to a very sharp fight: 6.g3 (better seems 6.e4) 6...b5! 7.♗xb5 exd5 8.♗f4 d6 9.c5! 0-0 10.cxd6 cxd6 11.♗d4 ♗c6 12.♗gf3 ♗e4 13.♗e3 ♗e5, Petrosian-Keene, Bath 1973.

An important alternative is 5...exd5 6.cxd5, and now White is somewhat better after 6...g6 7.e4 (7.g3!/? Kindermann-Sahovic, Reykjavik 1982) 7...♗g7 8.♗d3 0-0 9.♗ge2, Plachetka-Sahovic, Vrnjacka Banja 1985.

However, Black may consider 6...♖e7!?. The point is to prevent e4 and to press on d5 but still it is a dubious early queen move I must admit: 7.♗f4! (7.♗g5?! h6 8.♗xf6 ♖xf6 9.♗f3 ♗a6 10.g3 ♗c5 11.♗g2 a5 12.0-0 ♗d6 13.♗d2 0-0 14.♖c2 ♗e5±, Tyomkin-Kogan, Tel Aviv 1997) 7...♗e4! 8.♖c1 ♖f6 (8...g5? 9.♖d4) 9.g3 (9.♗h3) 9...♗xc3 10.♖xc3 ♗d6 11.♖e3+ ♗f8 12.♗xd6+ ♖xd6 13.♗g2 and

White was slightly better in Schroer-Kreuzer. New York 1983.



#### 6.♗f3

Black quickly gains an advantage after 6.e4 ♗e5! (6...0-0 7.f4 exd5 8.e5 ♖e8 9.cxd5∞ was Löffler-Horn, Königsfeld 1985) 7.♖c2 ♖e7 8.♗e2 ♗a6 9.f3 c6, Arlandi-Horn, Geneva 1988.

#### 6...0-0

Black should just castle and not interpolate 6...exd5 7.cxd5 0-0 as after 8.♗g5 ♖e8 9.e3 ♗a6 (9...♗e7 10.♗c4 h6 11.♗f4 ♗a6 12.♖d3 ♖c8 13.0-0±, Petrosian-Planinc, Ohrid 1972) 10.♗c4 h6 11.♗h4 c6 12.0-0 b5 13.♗a2 White is just better. Quinteros-Larsen, San Martin 1995.

#### 7.e4

Or 7.♗g5 ♗e7 8.♗f4 ♗h5 9.♗g3 ♗xg3 – Sloth-E.Pedersen, Denmark 1987 – and now if 10.hxg3 then 10...f5 is interesting.

#### 7...exd5 8.exd5 c6 9.♗e2

Black was slightly better in Bertok-Planinc, Zagreb 1972, after 9.dxc6 dxc6 10.♗e2 ♖c7 11.0-0 ♗bd7.

9...cxd5 10.cxd5 ♗a6 11.0-0 ♖e8 12.♗g5 ♗c5 13.♗d4 ♗e5 The point of 5...♗d6, Black has grasped the initiative and won after 14.♖a2 ♖b8 15.f4 ♗xd4+ 16.♖xd4 ♗xd5 17.♗xd5 ♖xe2 18.♖f3 ♖e8 19.♗h6 ♖e1+ 20.♗f2 ♖e2+ 21.♗g3 ♗e4+ 22.♗h3 f6 23.♗e7+ ♗h8 24.♖xd7 ♗f2+ 25.♖xf2 ♖xe7 0-1



□ Efim Bogoljubow

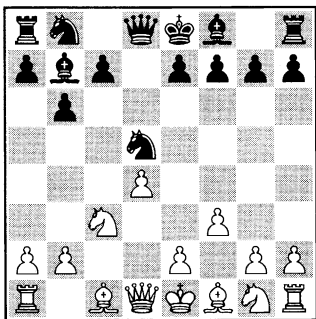
■ Alexander Alekhine

Germany/Netherlands Wch-m 1929 (8)

### 1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6 3.♙c3 ♙b7 4.f3

White fights for central control but misses out on his development – this usually leads to very original and sharp play.

### 4...d5 5.cxd5 ♘xd5



### 6.e4

In case of 6.♘xd5 Black has to make up his mind to take back with the queen or the bishop.

● 6...♘xd5 7.e4 ♖d7 (or 7...♖d6 8.a3 e5 9.♗e2 ♗e7 10.♗e3 0-0 11.♖c2 ♘d7 12.♗d1 ♗ad8 13.♘c3 exd4 14.♗xd4 ♖h6 15.♖f2 ♗g5±, Bern-Pedersen, Aarhus 1989) 8.♗c4 g6!? (this was the way the great Bobby played in his best years. Tartakower managed to hold the ex world champion with 8...e6 9.♗e2 ♗b4+ 10.♗d2 ♗xd2+ 11.♖xd2 0-0 12.0-0 c5 13.♗fd1±, ½-½ Euwe-Tartakower, Stockholm ol 1937) 9.♖b3!? (9.♗e2 ♗g7 10.0-0 0-0 11.♗e3 ♘c6 12.♖c1 ♗a5 gave Black counterplay in Chabanon-Haik, Montpellier 1991) 9...e6 10.♗e2 ♗g7 11.♗e3 ♘c6 12.♗d1 ♗a5 13.♖c2 ♖c6 14.♗d3 ♖xc2 15.♗xc2 0-0-0 16.♗f2 ♗d6 17.b3 ♘c6 18.♗d2 ♗hd8 19.♗hd1 ♘b4 20.♗b1 ♗a6 21.a3 ♘c6 22.♗d3 ♗xd3 23.♗xd3 f5!, Black got some

pressure on White's centre and went on to win, Agdamus-Fischer, Buenos Aires 1970.

● Another interesting game saw 6...♗xd5 7.e4 ♗b7 8.♗b5+!? (8.♗e3 e6) 8...c6 9.♗c4 e6 10.♗e2 ♗b4+ 11.♗d2 ♖h4+! (weakening White's pawn structure) 12.g3 ♖e7 13.a3 ♗xd2+ 14.♖xd2 ♘d7 15.0-0-0?! (safer is 15.0-0 0-0 16.♗ac1 c5 with equality) 15...0-0 16.♗b1 (Black is also doing very well after 16.♖f4 e5!) 16...c5! 17.dxc5 ♗e5! (now White is in trouble) 18.♖c3 ♖xc5 19.♗d4 19...♗ac8± 20.♖c1 ♘xc4 21.♖xc4 ♖xc4 22.♖xc4 ♗xc4 23.♖xc4 ♗a6 with a winning edge in Duchamp-Frydman, Prague Olympiad 1931.

### 6...♘xc3 7.bxc3 e6

This 'solid' move was played in many games. Also playable is 7...g6, for those who like Grünfeld-type structures 8.♗c4 (8.♗e3 ♗g7 9.♗c4 0-0 10.♗e2 c5 11.h4 h5 12.♖d2 ♖c7 13.♖c1 ♘c6 14.0-0 ♗fd8, P.Varga-Medvegy, Budapest 1995) 8...♗g7 9.♗e2 0-0 10.0-0 c5 11.♗e3 ♖c7 12.♖c1 ♘c6 13.♖d2 ♗fd8 14.♗fd1 ♗ac8, Black looks OK and went on to win in Ruiz Garcia-Jerez Perez, Spain 1992.

See the next game for 7...e5!?

### 8.♗b5+

Black need not fear the alternatives:

– 8.♖a4+ c6 9.♗f4 ♘d7 10.♗h3 ♗e7 11.♗e2 0-0 12.0-0 ♗h8 13.♗ad1 b5 14.♖b3 a6 15.♗e3 ♖c7 16.f4 c5, Van Doesburgh-Bogoljubow, Zandvoort 1936  
– 8.♗e3 ♗e7 9.♗b5+ c6 10.♗d3 0-0 11.♗e2 c5 12.dxc5 ♗xc5 13.♗xc5 bxc5 14.♗b1 ♖c7 15.♖b3 ♗c6 16.0-0 ♘d7 17.♖a3 ½-½ L.Popov-Keene, Dortmund 1973.

### 8...d7 9.♗e2 ♗e7 10.0-0 a6 11.♗d3 c5

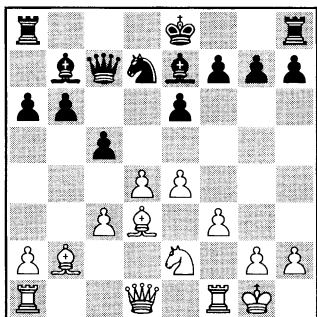
Black also gained good counterplay after 11...0-0 12.♗e3 c5 13.♖d2 ♖c7 14.♗fd1 ♗fd8 15.♗ac1 b5, Dufrenoy-Haik, France 1991.



## 12. ♖b2!?

This is not the best move. White should prefer any of the following moves: 12. ♖e3, 12. ♖f4, or 12. a4.

## 12... ♖c7



## 13. f4?!

And here 13. e5 was stronger.

## 13... ♖f6 14. ♖g3 h5! 15. ♖e2 h4 16. ♖h1 ♖h5 17. ♖g4?

This is a mistake – 17. ♖c1! ♖d6!?

## 17... 0-0-0 18. ♖ae1

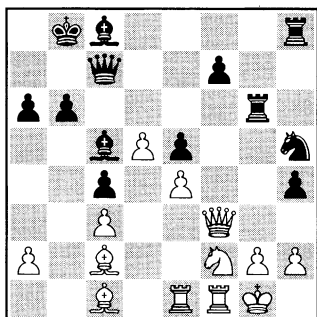
Or 18. f5 ♖f6 (planning ...e5) 19. ♖xg7? ♖h7.

## 18... ♖b8

With a strategically lost position for White.

## 19. f5 e5 20. d5 c4! 21. ♖c2 ♖c5+ 22. ♖f2 g6! 23. fxg6 ♖dg8 24. ♖c1 ♖c8 25. ♖f3 ♖xg6

With the annoying threat of ...♖g4.



## 26. ♖h1

White's position is beyond saving: 26. ♖e3 ♖xe3 27. ♖xe3 ♖f4 28. g3 hxg3 29. hxg3 f5! (29... ♖b7!?-+) with the idea of 30... ♖h7.

## 26... ♖g3+! 27. hxg3

Black wins after 27. ♖g1 ♖g4.

## 27... hxg3+ 28. ♖h3

Or 28. ♖g1 gxf2+ 29. ♖xf2 ♖g4 30. ♖g3 ♖e2, and now:

– 31. ♖xg6 fxg6 32. ♖xe2 ♖h7-+.

– Better is 31. ♖g5 f5 32. d6 (32. exf5 ♖xg5 33. ♖xg5 ♖h7-+) 32... ♖g7 33. ♖xe2 ♖xg5, but Black is still winning.

## 28... ♖xh3 29. gxh3 ♖xh3+ 30. ♖g2 ♖h2

Mate.

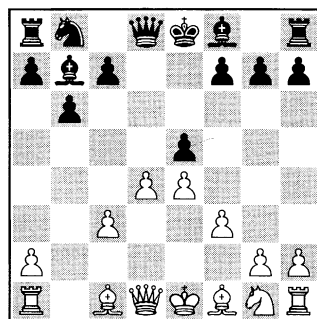
□ Erik Dignum

■ Arthur Kogan

Utrecht 1999

## 1. d4 ♖f6 2. c4 b6 3. ♖c3 ♖b7 4. f3 d5 5. cxd5 ♖xd5 6. e4 ♖xc3 7. bxc3 e5!

An aggressive and interesting gambit. It was this idea that I had in mind when I first started analysing the line. In fact I could implement it in the first game in which I tried the 2...b6 line!



## 8. ♖c4

● Here 8. ♖a4+ led to no advantage in



Lutikov-Van Geet, Amsterdam B 1968, after 8...♞d7 9.♞xd7+ ♚xd7 10.♚b1 ♜e7 11.♜e3 0-0.

● Black also got a good position after 8.♜e2 exd4 9.cxd4 ♜e7 (9...♜d6!?) 10.♜e3 0-0 11.♞b3 ♜g5 12.♜f2 ♜a6!?, Beliavsky-Panchenko, Grozny 1969.

● 8.dxe5 is the critical line, where I would recommend 8...♜d7! (8...♞h4+ 9.g3 ♞h5 10.e6! fxe6 11.♞b3, J.Graf-Horn, Geneva B 1990; 8...♞xd1+ 9.♜xd1 ♜c6 10.♜f4±) 9.♜f4 ♜c5 (it seems that Black has more than enough compensation for the pawn) 10.♜c4 ♞h4+ (10...♞e7) 11.♜g3 ♞e7 12.e6 fxe6 13.♜e2 e5! with ...0-0-0 coming up and a nice position. But not the immediate 13...0-0-0? 14.♜d4!.

● 8.♜b5+ c6 9.♜c4 ♜d7 10.♞b3 ♞h4+ 11.♜f1 ♞f6 12.♜h3 h6 13.♜f2 ♜d6 was unclear in Levitas-Tolush, Leningrad 1938.

### 8...exd4 9.♜e2!

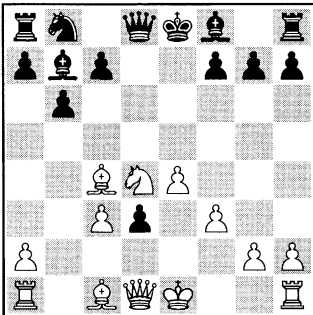
Here 9.cxd4 ♜b4+ will force the king to move to avoid losing the d4 pawn: 10.♜f2 0-0 gives Black the initiative.

### 9...d3!

Destroying White's pawn structure.

### 10.♜d4!?

10.♞xd3 ♞xd3 11.♜xd3 ♜d7 and with such a square as c5 for the knight, Black must be OK!



### 10...♜c5

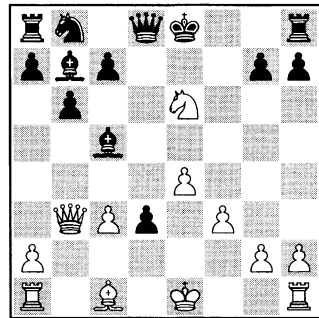
This is stronger than 10...c5, which weakens the d5 square: 11.♜e2! (11.♜f5 g6) 11...♜c6 (11...dxe2?? 12.♜xf7+!+-) 12.♞xd3 unclear (12.♜f4 ♜d6).

### 11.♜xf7+?!

White got too emotional, but in fact he really made me sweat for a while. The normal 11.♞xd3 would be answered by 11...♜c6.

### 11...♜xf7 12.♞b3+ ♜e8 13.♜e6

This is a position that is really hard to play as Black.



### 13...d2+!

This was part of my calculation. However, maybe even better, but still harder to calculate was 13...♞f6!, for example 14.♜g5 (14.♜xc5 bxc5 15.♞xb7 ♞xc3+ 16.♜f2 ♞xa1 17.♞xa8 ♞xa2+ 14...♞g6 15.♜xc5 ♞xg5! 16.♜xb7 (16.♞e6+ ♞e7+-) 16...♜d7! and ♜b7 is in trouble! If 17.0-0 then 17...♜c6!±.

### 14.♜xd2 ♜f2+!

This was the point! Black should calculate carefully of course.

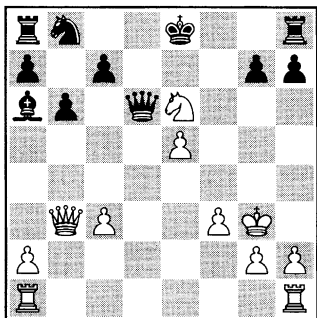
### 15.♜e2

15.♜xf2 ♞xd2+ 16.♜g3 would have forced me to find a hard move such as 16...♜e7!! (wrong is 16...♞d6+ 17.e5! ♞xe5+ - 17...♞e7 18.♞c4!? - 18.♜f2 and with ♞he1 coming, Black is danger) 17.♚hd1 (17.♜xc7 ♞d6+) 17...♞h6 18.♜d4 ♞g6+ 19.♜f2 ♚e8 20.♜f5+ ♜f8 21.♞a3+ ♜f7 22.♚d8 ♞e6



23.♖ad1 ♜xd8 24.♖xd8 ♜d7 25.♖xa8 ♜xa8  
26.♜xa7 ♜c6 and Black has an edge.

**15...♜a6+! 16.♞xf2 ♜xd2+ 17.♞g3  
♜d6+ 18.e5**



**18...♜e7?!**

Better was 18...♜xe5+ 19.f4 (19.♞f2 ♜e2+

20.♞g3 ♜c4 winning) 19...♜e3+ 20.♞h4,  
but I 'missed' 20...♞d7!♠ and my king es-  
capes from the danger zone, leaving Black  
with a material advantage and the white king  
on h4.

**19.♜d5! c6 20.♜d6 ♞f7!?**

Correct was 20...♜xd6! 21.exd6 ♜c4  
22.♞c7+ ♞d7 23.♞xa8 ♞xd6 and Black  
will win the knight on a8 and will retain the  
better chances.

**21.♜xe7+**

The best chance for White was 21.♞c7! ♜b7  
(21...♜d8 22.♜xe7+ ♞xe7 23.♞xa8 ♜b7  
24.♞xb6 axb6∞) 22.♖ad1 ♜c8 with unclear  
play.

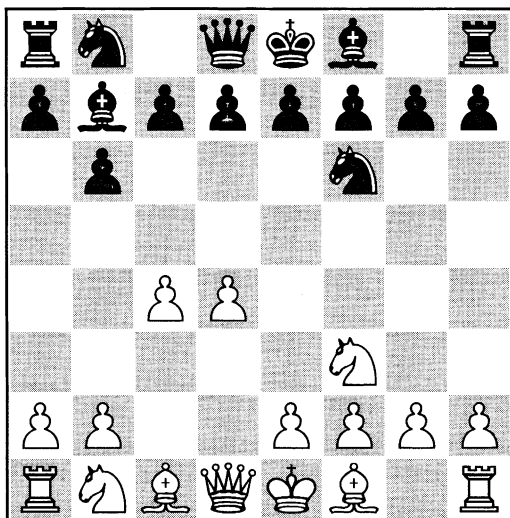
**21...♞xe7 22.♞c7 ♜b7 23.♖ad1 ♞d7  
24.♞xa8 ♜xa8 25.f4 ♜f8 26.a4 ♞c5  
27.♜d4 ♞b3 0-1**



## CHAPTER 12

*Arthur Kogan*

# The Queen's Grünfeld Line (Part II)



1.d4 Nf6 2.c4 b6 3.Nf3 Bb7

□ Shahin Mohandesi

■ Arthur Kogan

Antwerp Open 1996

**1.d4 Nf6 2.c4 b6 3.Nf3 Bb7**

3...e6 is the 'normal' Queen's Indian!

**4.Nc3**

● Against the passive 4.e3 it should be good enough to transpose to a 'healthy' Queen's Indian with 4...e6 (4...d5!?) 5.♗d3 d5 6.0-0 ♗d6 where Black usually obtains comfortable play: 7.b3 0-0 8.♗b2 ♗bd7 9.♗c3 a6 with the idea of ...♗e4 or ...c5. The chances are about equal.

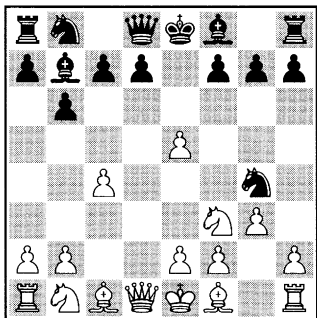
● 4.g3. Now White is hoping for a normal Queen's Indian where the bishop on g2 is

well placed, keeping an eye on d5 and having in mind a future e4. Here I would recommend 4...e5!?. Wow! What a surprise! By the way, this move was already played by Alekhine in 1921! Black of course has other more solid moves at his disposal (mainly 4...e6 transposing to the Queen's Indian) but I think that 4...e5 is more in the spirit of SOS. Before we investigate 4...e5 more fully I would like to point out another more positional way to 'unbalance' the position. Namely, to give up the light-squared bishop for the knight, and destroying White's pawn structure with 4...♗xf3!? 5.exf3 e6 6.♗g2 c6. After this sequence Black should take care about the 'white holes' in his queenside:



7.0-0 d5 8.cxd5 cxd5 9.f4 (the f5 break is in the air) 9...g6! (logical to keep position closed, preventing White's bishops from entering the game!) 10.b3 ♖e7 11.♟d2 0-0 12.♙b2 ♜c6 13.♙e2 ♜c8 14.♙ac1 ♙d6, Mishra-Ravisekhar, India 1988, where Black seems to be at least OK, since he managed to keep the position closed. His knights are better than White's two bishops.

Now let's analyse 4...e5 5.dxe5 (5.d5 ♙b4+ 6.♙d2 ♙e7 and with ...c6 coming, the future looks bright for Black) 5...♟g4 – a familiar manoeuvre from the Budapest Gambit.



And here White has a choice:

– 6.♙g2 ♟xe5 (6...♙b4+ 7.♙d2 ♙xd2+ – or 7...♙e7 – 8.♟bxd2 ♟xe5 seems OK for Black as well) 7.♟bd2 ♟xf3+ 8.♟xf3 ♙b4+ 9.♙d2 ♙xd2+ 10.♙xd2 0-0 11.0-0 d6 12.♟d4 ♙xg2 13.♙xg2 ♟d7 14.e4 ♜e8 15.♙ae1 ♟c5 and Black had easy play in Teichmann-Alekhine, Berlin m-3 1921.

– 6.♙g5!? ♟e7 7.♙xe7 ♙xe7 8.♙g2 ♟xe5 9.0-0 ♟xf3+ (9...♟xc4? 10.♙d4±; 9...0-0 10.♟xe5 ♙xg2 11.♙xg2 ♙xe5 12.♟c3 seems only slightly more pleasant for White) 10.♙xf3 ♙xf3 11.exf3 0-0 12.♟c3 ♟c6 (12...♙b4 13.♟d5) 13.♜e1 ♙c5 14.♟d5 (not 14.♙xd7 ♟d4), and now 14...♟d4?! was inaccurate, not because of 15.♜e4 ♟e6, J.Horvath-Welling, Miskolc 1989, but because of 15.♜e5!±.

I would recommend instead 14...♙xc4! 15.♟xc7 ♙ac8 with counterplay for Black.

– Interesting is 6.♙h3!? ♟xe5 7.0-0!? (but not 7.♟xe5 ♙xh1 8.f3 ♙e7!) 7...♟xc4 8.♙d3 (8.b3 ♙f6) 8...♟d6 9.♟c3 and now White would have nice compensation after 9...♙e7 10.♟d5. Therefore Black should play 9...♟a6! with unclear play.

#### 4...d5!?

Again 4...e6 is just the Queen's Indian.

#### 5...g5

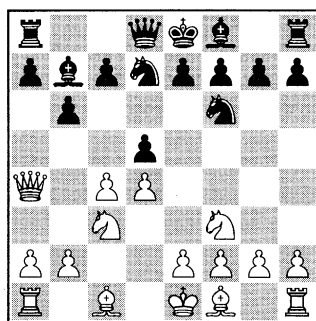
This aggressive move is also reminiscent of the Grünfeld!

There is an important alternative in the form of 5.♙a4+.

Now bad is 5...♙d7? 6.♙xd7+ ♟xd7 (or 6...♟bxd7 7.♟b5!) 7.♟e5+ ♟e8 8.♟b5! (too slow is 8.e3 e6 9.cxd5 exd5 10.♙d2 a6±, Farago-Winants, Wijk aan Zee B 1987) 8...♟a6 9.cxd5 ♟xd5 10.a3! with a serious positional advantage.

Interesting is 5...♙c6!? since 6.♙b3 dxc4 (6...e6 7.♙g5 ♟e7 8.e3±) 7.♙xc4 e6 8.♙g5 ♟e7 9.e3 0-0 seems playable. Black plans ...♙b7 and ...c5. However, White does retain the better chances thanks to his strong centre.

That is why we will analyse 5...♟bd7 now, when White has three options.



● The straightforward 6.cxd5 ♟xd5 7.♟xd5 ♙xd5 8.♟e5 leads to unclear play



following 8...a6!.

● In case of 6.♘g5, Black should not play 6...♙e4 because of 7.cxd5 (7.♘xd5 ♘xg5 8.♘xg5 e6) 7...♙xc3 8.bxc3 ♙xd5 9.♘d2 and White is better.

Stronger is 6...dxc4, when the lines fork:

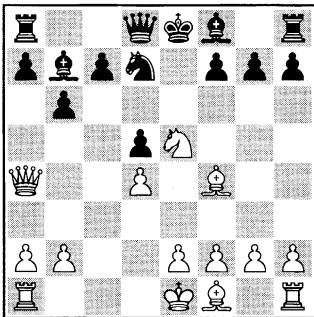
– 7.♖xc4 e6 8.e4 h6 9.♙h4 g5 10.♙g3 ♘xe4 11.♙xc7 ♘d6! is slightly better for Black.

– After 7.♙xf6 exf6 8.e4 a6! Black is fine, while 8...♙d6 9.♙xc4 a6 is also possible.

● 6.♙e5 e6 is strange:

In case of the annoying 7.♘c6 things are far from clear after 7...♖c8! 8.g3 a6! 9.♙g2 b5! (but not 9...dxc4 10.♖xc4 b5 11.♖b3 ♘b8 12.d5! exd5 13.♙a5) 10.cxb5 axb5 11.♖xb5 ♙d6! 12.0-0 ♙a6 13.♖b3 ♙c4 14.♖c2 ♖b7 15.b3 ♖xc6 16.bxc4 ♖xc4 and Black is slightly better.

Therefore White should continue with 7.cxd5 ♘xd5 (but not 7...exd5 8.e4!) 8.♘xd5 (8.♙d2 a6 is fine) 8...exd5 (if 8...♙xd5 then 9.e4! ♙xe4 10.♙b5 c6 11.♘xc6 ♙xc6 12.♙xc6±) 9.♙f4



Now Black has several interesting possibilities at his disposal:

– 9...c6?! 10.♘xc6 ♙xc6 11.♖xc6 ♙b4+ 12.♙d1. In this funny position, the compensation seems insufficient.

– 9...♙d6 10.e3 (Black is OK after 10.♖c1 0-0! 11.♖xd7 ♖xd7 12.♘xd7 ♙xf4 13.e3

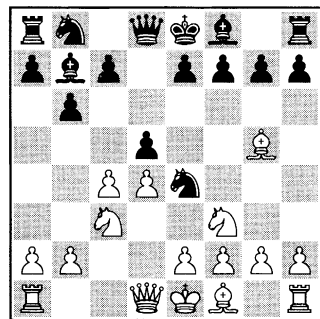
♖fe8 14.♙d2 ♙d6) 10...♙xe5, Burgess-E. Pedersen, Aarhus 1990, led to an immediate draw, but probably White has the better chances: 11.♙xe5 0-0 12.♙g3± c5 13.♙d3 ♘f6 14.0-0 ♙e4 15.♙f4.

– I would suggest 9...a6!? for further analysis. This move takes control of the b5 square and prepares ...b5 and ...c5 ideas.

– However, my personal favourite is the surprising 9...a5!? ('threatening' ♙b4+) 10.a3 (10.0-0-0 ♙d6 11.e3 ♙xe5 12.♙xe5 0-0 13.♙f4 c5 with unclear play) 10...♙d6 11.e3 ♙xe5! 12.♙xe5 0-0 (now with the black pawn on a5, the white queen looks misplaced) 13.♙g3 c5 14.♙d3 (14.♙b5 ♘f6 with ...♙e4 and enough counterplay) 14...♘f6 (14...♙a6!? 15.♙xa6 ♖xa6 16.0-0 is still somewhat better for White) with nice counterplay for Black.

### 5...♙e4!

If White's previous move 5.♙g5 was taken from the Grünfeld then let's use a familiar antidote from that opening!



### 6.♙f4

A very impressive game was played by Nikolic: 6.cxd5 ♘xg5 (I would recommend the safer 6...♘xc3 7.bxc3 ♖xd5 with interesting play, Gelfand-Djuric, Ulcinj 1997) 7.♘xg5 (7.♖a4+!? c6 8.♘xg5 e6! with counterplay) 7...e6 8.♘xf7! (White gets two pawns and an attack for the knight. Possible



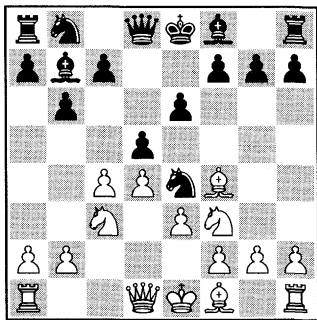
is 8. ♖a4+ c6 9. ♘f3 exd5 and 8. ♘h3!? exd5 followed by a rapid c7-c5) 8... ♖xf7 9. dxe6+ ♗xe6 (9... ♗g8 10. e4±) 10. e4 g6 11. ♙c4+ ♗e7 12. ♖f3! ♖e8 13. 0-0 ♙g7 14. ♖g3 ♗d8 15. ♖ac1 ♖f8 16. e5 ♘c6 17. ♙d5 a6 18. ♖h4+ ♗c8 19. ♖xh7 with a winning edge in Nikolic-Djuric, Bled 1991.

There is room for creativity with 6.e3 ♘g5 7. ♘g5 e6 8. ♖g4 ♙e7 9. h4!? with an interesting game.

6. ♙h4 is best met by 6... dxc4! 7. ♖a4+ (7.e3 ♘xc3 8. bxc3 ♖d5 9. ♘e5 b5 looks at least OK for Black) 7... ♖d7 8. ♖xc4 ♘d6 (with a future ... ♘f5 or even ... ♖f5 coming and enough counterplay) 9. ♖d3 ♘f5 (better is 9... ♖f5) 10. ♘e5! ♖e6 (10... ♖xd4?? 11. ♖xf5) 11. ♙g3 ♘g3 12. hxg3 with attacking chances.

### 6...e6 7.e3

And here I made the 'brave decision' to play



### 7...g5!

This looks overly optimistic but is in fact based on concrete calculation and assessment!

With 7... ♙d6 Black would be fighting to equalize the game (and nothing more). This is not my style!

### 8. ♙e5 f6 9. ♙g3

Even after 9. cxd5!? exd5 10. ♙g3 h5! 11. ♖c2 (White loses in the line 11. ♖b3 h4 12. ♘xe4 - 12. ♙b5+ c6 13. ♙xb8 cxb5+ -

12... dxe4 13. ♖e6+ ♖e7) 11... ♙b4! White still has problems to solve, for example 12. ♖a4+ ♘c6 13. ♙b5 ♖d7!± 14. ♖xb4 ♘xb4 15. ♙xd7+ ♘xd7 and White can't avoid losing material!

### 9...h5!

And White is already under attack!

### 10.h4 ♘g3 11.fxg3 g4

Also good looks 11... ♖d6 12. ♗f2 gxf4 13. gxf4 ♖g8 with an attack.

### 12. ♘d2 ♖d6!

Black's moves must be energetic to attack White's weaknesses and at the same time to develop his pieces as fast as possible to attacking places!

### 13. ♗f2 ♙h6!

Now the ... ♙xe3+ idea is in the air!

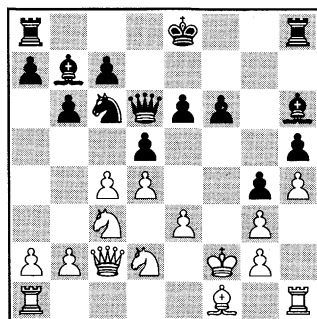
### 14. ♖c2

White threatens 15. ♖g6+, but...

### 14... ♘c6!?

Incredibly enough, I just ignored his threat! Again I chose the aggressive way: now I am threatening ... ♙xe3 since the d4 pawn will be hanging as well. At the same time I am preparing a safe place for the black king with ... 0-0-0 after which even a pawn break like ... e5 will be a nice idea!

Maybe even better than the text-move was the more positional 14... f5!?, fixing White's kingside weaknesses, preventing ♖g6+ and in fact preparing a possible ... 0-0 for Black!





# 15.♔e1?!

White got very nervous about the sac on e3 and decided to prevent it!

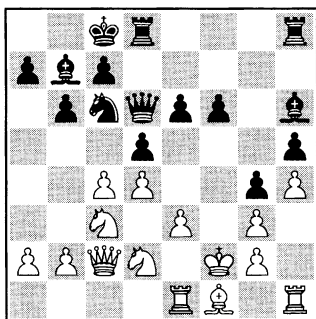
What did I have in mind against the attractive looking 15.♖g6+? My idea was that after 15...♕d7! I get my ♖a8 into play quickly and the ...♙xe3 idea is still in the air!

– 16.♘b5 ♙xe3+! 17.♙xe3 ♖xg3+ 18.♙e2 a6 19.cxd5 (or 19.♖f7+ ♕e7 20.♘c3 ♖af8) 19...♕e7 20.dxe6+ ♙xe6! (Black wins back his piece, retaining the safer king!) 21.♕xc7+ (21.♕c3 ♖xc3) 21...♖xc7 22.♖d3 ♖ad8.

– 16.cxd5 ♕e7! 17.dxe6+ (17.♖xf6?? ♖af8+) 17...♖xe6 18.♖d3 ♖ae8 with a nice initiative and at least enough compensation for the pawn! For example: 19.e4 f5! 20.d5 ♖d6 21.♙g1 ♙c8! and White's centre will soon fall.

# 15...0-0-0

Now Black's advantage is more than evident. Just compare the safety factor of the kings!



# 16.c5!

This is an attack out of despair, but anyway the coming ...e5 pawn break idea was really too annoying for White, so at least he tries 'to die' as a hero!

Also bad are 16.♙d3 ♘b4, and 16.♘b5 ♖d7 17.cxd5 ♖xd5 18.♙c4 ♕xd4!.

In case of 16.a3 Black has 16...e5! 17.cxd5

exd4! 18.♘c4 dxe3+ 19.♘xe3 ♖he8!? (19...♕e5) 20.dxc6 ♖d2+ 21.♖xd2 ♖xd2+ 22.♙g1 ♙xe3+ 23.♖xe3 ♖xe3 24.cxb7+ ♙xb7 and White is in trouble.

# 16...bxc5 17.♘b5 ♖e7 18.♘b3

18.dxc5 will be very sad for White after 18...e5.

# 18...a6 19.♘c3

Not enough either was 19.♕xc5 axb5 20.♙xb5 ♖d6 21.♖a4 ♕e7 22.♖a7 (22.♖b4 ♙b8 23.♙a6 ♖b6!?) 22...♖b6.

# 19...♙xe3+!

Now it's party time!

# 20.♖xe3 cxd4

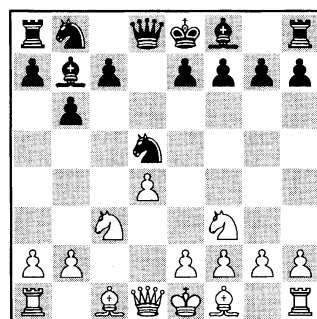
Black is winning of course.

21.♖e1 dxc3 22.♖xc3 d4 23.♖c5 ♖d6 24.♖c1 d3 25.♖d1 ♕e5 26.♙e3 ♖d7 27.♖b4 ♖d5 28.♕c5 ♕c4+ 29.♙f2 ♖d4+ 0-1

After this game GM Piket asked me 'politely', half joking, half serious, if I always play in 'such old classical style'.

□ Bela Toth  
 ■ Pascal Horn  
 Biel 1986

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 b6 3.♘f3 ♙b7 4.♘c3 d5 5.cxd5 ♕xd5



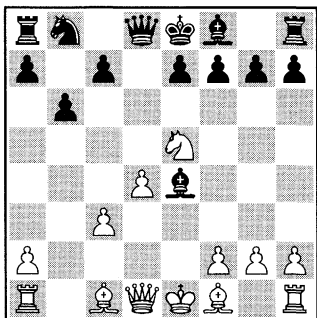
# 6.♖c2



This move is logical in the sense that it prepares e4. White has other plans at his disposal too. Let's see what happens if the e-pawn moves.

The natural but modest 6.e3 can be met by 6...g6!? (6...e6 is again a Queen's Indian type of position if this is to your taste!) 7.♖b5+!? c6 8.♗d3 ♗g7 9.0-0 0-0 10.e4 ♖xc3 11.bxc3 c5 12.♗e3 cxd4 13.cxd4 ♖c6 with unclear play in Jelling-E.Pedersen, Danish Championship 1987.

An interesting gambit is 6.e4!? ♖xc3 7.bxc3 ♗xe4 8.♗e5!



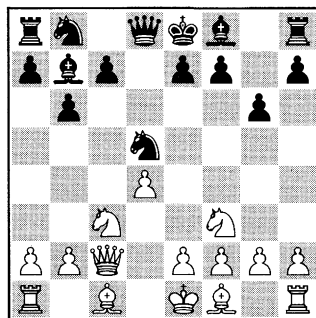
Now the game Adla-J.Rodriguez, Argentina Championship 1989, went 8...♗b7? when White missed the strong shot 9.♖xf7! ♗xf7 10.♖h5+ g6 11.♖e5 with a killing attack or winning material.

I would recommend instead 8...♗d5!. Now after 9.c4 ♗b7 10.♖a4+ c6 11.♗e3 e6 White's compensation might not be enough. While in case of 9.♖g4 Black has 9...g6! (9...h5!?), and with ...♗g7 coming Black seems to be happy about his extra pawn. If 10.♗c4 then 10...c6!.

Also playable is 8...e6! 9.♖g4 ♗d5 10.♗d3 h5 11.♗g6!? hxg4 12.♗xf7+ ♗e7 13.♗g5+ ♗d6 14.♗xd8 ♖d7. This would be a funny adventure, but probably not so bad for Black!

**6...g6**

And now we have a real kind of Grünfeld! Black may also consider 6...♖xc3 7.bxc3 (7.♖xc3 e6) and only now 7...g6. However, not 7...♖d5?! 8.e3 g6 9.♗d3 when White is better.



## 7.e4

This is most natural, but practice has also seen:

● 7.♖xd5!? ♖xd5 8.e3 (not 8.♖xc7?! ♖d7 with ...♗c8 coming and a nice initiative for only one pawn) 8...♖c6 (also playable was 8...♖d7 for example 9.♗c4 ♖f5 10.♖xf5 gxf5) 9.♗c4 ♖d6 10.♗d2 ♗g7 11.♗c1 a6! 12.a3 0-0 13.♗d3! (Loek didn't really want to let me relax...) 13...♗ac8 14.♗e4 ♖d8 15.♗xb7 ♖xb7 16.♖e4 c6 17.♗b4 ♖d5! 18.♖xd5 cxd5 19.♖d2 ♗f6 and White looks a bit better even though Black's position is solid enough, Van Wely-Kogan, Antwerp 1996.

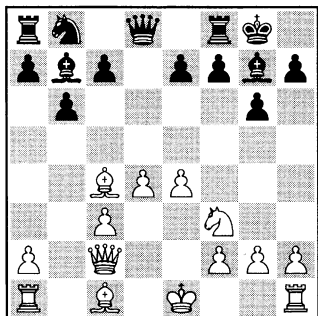
● 7.♗d2 (again in the spirit of the Grünfeld!) 7...♗g7 8.e4 ♖f6 9.0-0-0 0-0 10.h4 ♖g4! 11.♗f4 ♖c6! 12.d5 ♖b4 13.♖d2 c6! (after a very nice knight's dance, Adorjan also invited his pawns to the 'party'!) 14.a3 a5!? 15.dxc6 ♖xc6 16.♗b5 e5! 17.♖e2 ♖c8 18.♗e3 ♖xe3 19.fxe3 ♖a7 20.♖b1 ♖xb5 21.♖xb5 ♖g4 22.♖xe5 ♖xg2 23.♗hg1 ♖h2 24.♖f3 ♖f2, 0-1 Wells-Adorjan, Hungary 1995. A true masterpiece!

**7...♖xc3 8.bxc3 ♗g7 9.♗c4**



Black also looks OK in 9.♗e2 0-0 10.0-0 ♘d7 (10...c5 is the other logical way) 11.a4 e5 12.♗b2 ♖e8 13.♗d3 exd4 14.cxd4 c5! 15.d5 c4! 16.♗xc4 ♗xb2 17.♖xb2 ♖xe4 with fine counterplay, Bukic-Planinc, Skopje 1971.

**9...0-0**



### 10.h4!?

This aggressive idea which tries to punish Black's solid set-up, was played in two games!

More 'normal' is 10.0-0 c5 (10...♘d7!?) 11.♖d1 but Black has good play following 11...♖c7 or 11...cxd4 12.cxd4 ♘d7.

### 10...♖d7!

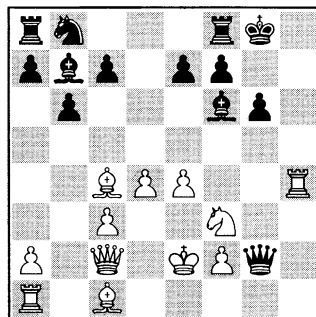
This introduces the ...♖g4 idea which gives White a real headache.

### 11.h5

Black is fine after 11.♗e3 ♖g4 12.♘g5 ♗a6!. The game Barle-Panchenko, Sukhumi 1970, went 13.♗b3 h6 (13...c5!?) 14.f3 ♖d7 15.e5 hxg5 16.♖xg6 ♖b5! 17.♖c2 ♖d3 unclear.

The safest option was 13.♗xa6 ♘xa6 14.♖e2 ♖xe2+ (but not 14...♖xg2? 15.0-0-0 winning) 15.♗xe2 c5 with typical counterplay in the centre.

**11...♖g4 12.hxg6 hxg6 13.♖h4 ♖xg2 14.♗e2! ♗f6**



### 15.♗e1

Here 15.♗e3!? ♗xh4 16.♖g1 ♖xg1 17.♘xg1 e6! (17...♗a6?! 18.♗xa6 ♘xa6 19.e5!±) 18.♘f3 ♗e7 looks OK for Black!

**15...♖g1 16.♘f3 ♖g2 17.♖h2?**

Of course 17.♗e1! will be a draw!

**17...♖g4 18.♗d3 c5!**

Now 19...c4 is a major threat and suddenly White is just lost!

**19.♗h6 c4! 20.♗xc4 ♗xe4 21.♖d2 ♖xf3+ 22.♗f1 ♖c8 23.♖e1 ♖xc4 24.♖e3 ♖f5 25.♖eh3 ♗f3 26.♖e1 ♖d3+ 27.♗g1 ♖e2 28.♖xe2 ♗xe2 29.♗f4 ♘d7 0-1**

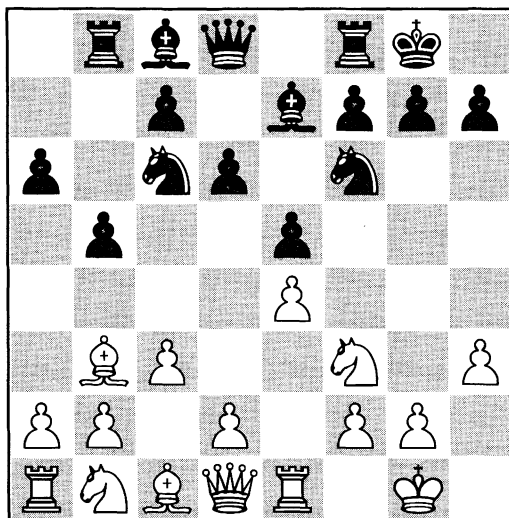
A really impressive win with black against a stronger opponent by the expert Pascal Horn. He used 2...b6! as his main weapon for years!



# CHAPTER 13

## *Adrian Mikhalchishin*

### A Spanish SOS



#### Gajewski's 9...♖b8!?

Usually SOS lines start well before move 10. Indeed, we want to take our opponent by surprise as early as possible. However, when we can present a surprise in one of the most well-known tabiya positions known to mankind then it makes sense to make an exception.

What, it would seem, can possibly be devised in the main line of the Ruy Lopez on the 9th move? Millions of players have looked at the classical Spanish after 1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5 a6 4.♗a4 ♘f6 5.0-0 ♗e7 6.♝e1 b5 7.♗b3 d6 8.c3 0-0 9.h3, and no one has thought about playing 9...♖b8!?

True, in the game Ziska-Pickering, Nice 1974, this was played, but most probably by

accident, since the idea in the subsequent play was completely different.

Then in 2003 the talented young Polish IM Grzegorz Gajewski began employing this continuation. His idea was to improve on the variation 9...a5 10.d4 exd4 11.cxd4 d5, when 12.♗e5! ♘xe5 13.dxe5 ♗xe4 14.♗xd5 is very strong. With the rook on b8 this variation is not to be feared at all!

Next this idea was included in the repertoire of Ruy Lopez expert Vladimir Malaniuk.

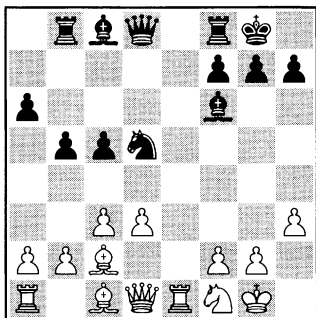
I have already mentioned the main idea – to remove the rook from a8. But the second idea is a strengthening of Black's role in the centre and, naturally, a reduction in the danger of an attack by White on the kingside.



□ Sergey Fedorchuk  
 ■ Grzegorz Gajewski  
 Warsaw 2005

**1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♙b5 a6 4.♙a4  
 ♘f6 5.0-0 ♙e7 6.♖e1 b5 7.♙b3 d6  
 8.c3 0-0 9.h3 ♖b8!? 10.d4**

It is hard to devise anything more sensible. After the modest 10.d3 ♘a5 11.♙c2 c5 12.♘bd2 ♘c6 13.♘f1 d5! (transposing into an interesting version of the Marshall!) 14.exd5 ♘xd5 15.♘xe5 ♘xe5 16.♞xe5 ♙f6 17.♞e1



17...b4! Black has excellent development and play against White's weaknesses on the queenside.

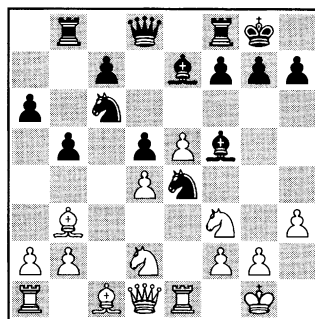
In the game Zhigalko-Gajewski, Pardubice 2005, after the continuation 18.d4 bxc3 19.bxc3 g6, White was able to escape from his difficulties by offering a draw with 20.♞f3.

**10...exd4 11.cxd4 d5 12.e5**

The point of Gajewski's line is apparent after 12.♘e5 ♘xe5 13.dxe5 ♘xe4 14.♙xd5 when the rook is not hanging on a8. This allows Black to equalize without difficulties following 14...♘c5 15.♞f3 c6! 16.♙xc6 ♘d3 17.♞d1 ♘xe5 18.♞e2 ♞c7 19.♙e4 ♘g6, Stehno-Malaniuk, Marianske Lazne 2006.

**12...♘e4 13.♘bd2 ♙f5**

The bishop is well-placed on this diagonal.



**14.♙c2**

After 14.♘f1 ♙e6 15.♘g3 ♘xg3 16.fxg3 ♙f5 17.♙c2 ♞d7 18.♙d2 ♙xc2 19.♞xc2 ♘d8 20.♞ac1 ♘e6 21.♞c6 White has slightly the better ending, Warakowski-Gajewski, Poland 2003. It was dangerous to play 14...♘a5 15.♙xd5! ♞xd5 16.♘e3 ♞d7 17.♘xf5 ♞xf5 18.♞e2, but 14...♙b4 15.♞e2 ♘e7 would have been correct.

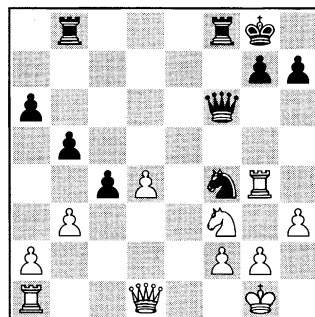
**14...♘b4! 15.♙b1**

The acceptance of the pawn sacrifice by 15.♙xe4 dxe4 16.♘xe4 ♙xe4 17.♞xe4 was very dangerous on account of 17...♞d5.

**15...c5! 16.♘xe4 dxe4 17.♙xe4 ♙xe4  
 18.♞xe4 c4 19.♞g4 f5! 20.exf6**

It is clear that after 20.♞g3 White's extra pawn does not compensate for the position of his rook on g3.

**20...♙xf6 21.♙g5 ♘d3 22.♙xf6 ♞xf6  
 23.b3 ♘f4**





24.♟e5 ♖bd8 25.♞h2 c3!

This pawn will become very unpleasant.

26.b4 ♟d5! 27.a4 ♜xf2 28.♟d3 ♜d2  
29.♞g3 ♜xd1 30.♞xd1 bxa4 31.♞c1  
a3 32.♞g5 ♜fe8 33.♟c5 ♟xb4

It was not essential to give up the c3-pawn.  
33...♞e2 and 33...a2 were both good.

34.♞xc3 a2 35.♞a3 ♞xd4 36.♟xa6  
♞d1 37.♟xb4 a1♜ 38.♞xa1 ♞xa1  
39.♟d5 ♞ee1 40.♞f5 h6 41.♞f2 ♞ad1  
42.♟b4 ♞e3 43.♟c2 ♞ed3 44.♞f4 ♞c3  
45.♟b4 ♞d2 46.♞f5 ♞b3 47.♟d5  
♞bb2 0-1

□ Zoltan Almasi

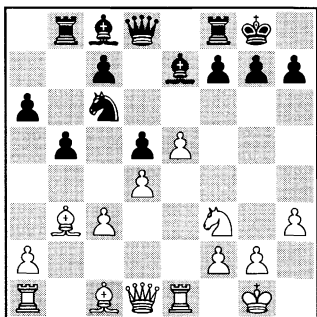
■ Dusko Pavasovic

Sibenik 2006

1.e4 e5 2.♟f3 ♟c6 3.♟b5 a6 4.♟a4  
♟f6 5.0-0 ♟e7 6.♞e1 b5 7.♟b3 d6  
8.c3 0-0 9.h3 ♞b8 10.d4 exd4  
11.cxd4 d5 12.e5 ♟e4 13.♟c3

A clearly more active continuation than the  
development of the knight at d2. Black is  
practically forced to exchange on c3, after  
which the structure becomes very dou-  
ble-edged – i.e. one demanding determined  
and forceful action by both sides.

13...♟xc3 14.bxc3



14...♟f5

Black can also try immediately attacking the

centre by 14...♟a5 15.♟c2 c5, although the  
exchange of the light-square bishops should  
be to his advantage.

15.♟c2 ♜d7

Logical development, although again  
15...♞xc2 16.♜xc2 ♟a5 followed by c7-c5  
was possible.

16.♟g5 ♞xc2?

Exchanges are to Black's advantage – after  
16...♟xg5 17.♟xg5 h6 18.♟f3 ♟e7 and  
19...c5 he would not have the slightest prob-  
lems.

17.♜xc2 ♟d8

Correctly switching the knight to the power-  
ful blockading square e6. Now after  
17...♟xg5 18.♟xg5 mate is threatened  
which explains why Black should have  
traded the dark-squared bishops on the pre-  
vious move.

18.♟e3!

Now White can and should avoid the ex-  
change.

18...♟e6 19.♟h2 c5?

Black should have maintained the blockading  
policy to the end by 19...f5 20.exf6 ♟xf6  
21.♟g4 c5 with reasonable counterplay. Now  
his play comes too late against White's ener-  
getic attack on the kingside.

20.f4 ♞fc8

Here too 20...f5 should have been played.  
Black is playing on the wrong part of the  
board.

21.♜d3 c4 22.♜c2 b4 23.cxb4 ♞xb4

No better was 23...♟xb4 24.♞f1, after which  
the advance of the f4-pawn will break up the  
position of black's king.

24.f5 ♟g5

Other knight moves do not improve matters.

25.f6! ♟xf6 26.exf6 ♟xf6 27.♟g4  
♟e4?

This signifies immediate capitulation. After  
27...♟d8 Black has a difficult position, but it  
is still possible to resist.

28.♜xe4!

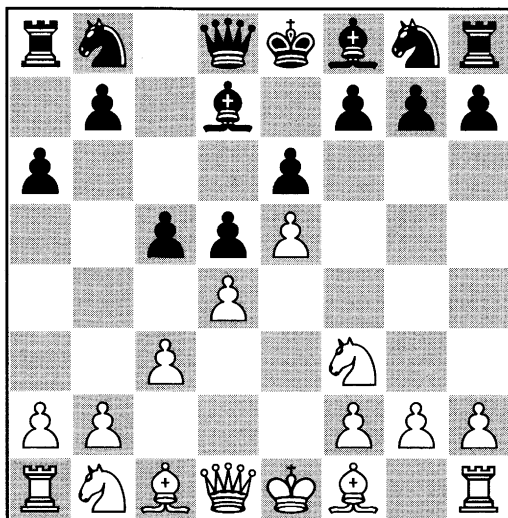
1-0



## CHAPTER 14

*Jeroen Bosch*

# The French Advance with 5...a6



### Exchanging the French Bishop

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♕d7 5.♘f3 a6**

An interesting little pawn move. Black aims for the exchange of his so-called bad bishop via ...♗b5. This manoeuvre is often executed by means of 4...♖b6, 5...♕d7 and 6...♗b5. There are some drawbacks attached to that method though. Many white players happily go for 6.a3 ♗b5 7.c4 or 6.♗e2 ♗b5 7.c4 and, after 7...dxc4 or 7...♗xc4 8.♗xc4 dxc4 (in either case both retorts are possible) there is the advance d4-d5. Keeping the queen on d8 definitely prevents this. Moreover, it may not be so bad to have to take back on b5 with the a-pawn. Black will be saddled with doubled b-pawns, but the a-file

is opened for the rook, the pawn on b5 controls some light squares, and it may be pushed to b4 to gain more space. Please note that Black will often take on d4 before executing his ....♗b5 idea. We will illustrate the main ideas by means of five games.

□ **Maximilian Meinhardt**

■ **Rainer Knaak**

Germany Bundesliga 2006/07

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.e5 c5 4.c3 ♕d7 5.♘f3 a6 6.h4**

White gains space on the kingside and leaves the bishop on f1 for the moment. In that way he loses no time with ♗xb5 (as he would af-

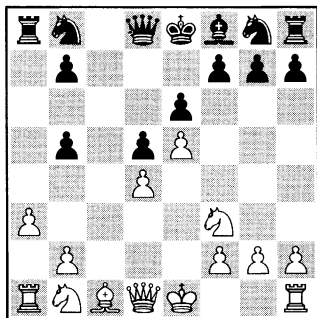


ter 6.♗e2 or 6.♗d3, which are nevertheless the most popular replies). Let's have a look at some alternatives:

● 6.♗a3. I don't like this move. In Lanzani-Sulava, Turin 1998, Black got an excellent position by means of some simple and typically 'French' manoeuvres: 6...cxd4 7.cxd4 ♗xa3! 8.bxa3 ♘e7 9.♗d3 ♗b5! 10.0-0 ♗xd3 11.♗xd3 ♘bc6 12.♖b1 ♗d7 13.♗d2 h6! 14.h4 0-0 15.h5 f6!.

● 6.dxc5 ♗xc5 7.♗d3 leads to about equal play. Black was better in the old game Nun-Spiridonov, Decin 1975, following 7...♘e7 8.♗f4 ♘g6 9.♗g3 ♗b5!? (9...♘c6) 10.♗xb5+ axb5 11.b4 ♗b6 12.0-0 h5! 13.h4 ♗d7 14.♘bd2 ♘e7! (manoeuvring the knight to f5, from where it controls d4) 15.♘b3 ♘f5 16.♗f4 ♗c6 17.♘fd4 ♗xd4 18.cxd4 ♗b6 19.g3 ♘c6 and Black wins material.

● 6.a3. Another waiting move that is characteristic of the French Advance Variation. Black should now execute his positional idea with 6...cxd4 7.cxd4 ♗b5 8.♗xb5+ axb5



9.0-0 (Black is fine after 9.♗g5 ♗a5+ 10.♘bd2 h6 11.♗e3 b4 12.0-0 bxa3 13.bxa3 ♘e7 14.♗b3 ♖a7 15.♘b1 ♗a4 16.♗b2 ♗d7 17.♘c3 ♘ec6 Rogulj-Drazic, Jesolo 1999). Now the immediate 9...b4!? is quite playable (while 9...♘c6 is a natural alternative):

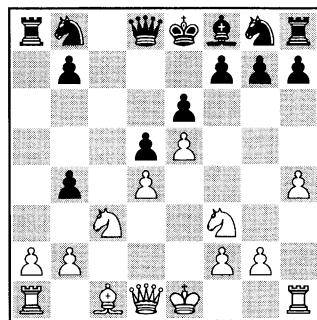
– 10.♘bd2 ♘h6 11.♘b3 ♘f5 12.axb4 ♖xa1 13.♘xa1 ♗xb4 14.♗b3 ♘c6 15.♘c2 ♗b6 with even chances in Ristic-Nestorovic, Belgrade 2005.

– 10.♗g5 ♘e7 11.♘bd2 h6 12.♗xe7 ♗xe7 13.axb4 ♖xa1 14.♗xa1 ♗xb4 15.♗a4+ ♘c6 16.♘b3 0-0 with equality, Delchev-Drazic, Saint Vincent 2003.

### 6...cxd4

6...h5?! 7.♗e2 cxd4 8.cxd4 ♗b5 9.♘c3 ♗xe2 10.♘xe2 ♘c6 11.0-0 ♗e7 12.♗g5 ♘h6 13.♘g3 g6 14.♗d2 ♗xg5 15.♘xg5 ♗b6 16.♖fd1 is a typical slight edge for White, Stehno-Jurek, Olomouc 2006. 6...♗b5?! 7.♗xb5+ axb5 8.dxc5 ♗xc5 9.b4 ♗b6 10.♘a3 is best avoided. Black loses his b5-pawn. That is why Black should take on d4 before playing ...♗b5.

7.cxd4 ♗b5 8.♗xb5+ axb5 9.♘c3 b4



Chasing the knight away and gaining some useful space on the queenside.

10.♘e2 ♘e7 11.♘f4 ♗b6 12.0-0 ♘d7!?

Also playable was 12...♘bc6.

13.♗e3 ♘f5 14.♘g5 ♗e7 15.♗g4

This looks aggressive but it invites Knaak's next move.

15...h5 16.♗h3 g6

White's queen looks a little off-side now.

17.b3 ♘f8 18.♖ac1

Interesting was 18.♘gxe6+ fxe6 19.♘xg6+ ♗g7 20.♘xh8 ♖xh8 and Black is all right

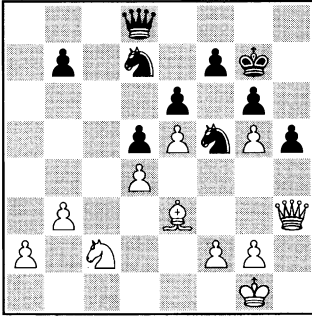


with his two knights, but it looks like a better fighting opportunity than the game.

**18...♗xg5! 19.hxg5 ♖g7 20.♖c2 ♜hc8 21.♜fc1 ♜xc2 22.♜xc2 ♖d8**

Preparing to counter on the c-file, and correctly foreseeing the consequences of the forthcoming pawn sacrifice.

**23.♟d3 ♜c8! 24.♟xb4 ♜xc2 25.♟xc2**



**25...♜c7! 26.♟e1 ♜a5**

Black not only regains his pawn, but gains another in the process. Note the vast difference in activity between both queens. Also strong, by the way, was 26...♜c3.

**27.♟f3 ♜xa2 28.♟d2 ♟xd4**

Or 28...♜a1+ 29.♟h2 ♟xd4.

**29.♟xd4 ♜xd2 30.♜e3 ♜d1+** Keeping the queens on is easiest. Black won after **31.♟h2 ♟b8 32.♟c5 ♟c6 33.♜f4 ♜xb3 34.♜f6+ ♟g8 35.♟d6 ♜c4 36.f4 b5 37.f5 ♜f4+ 0-1**

□ Adnan Avdic

■ Sinisa Drazic

Djakovo 2005

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 c5 3.c3 d5 4.e5 ♟d7 5.♟f3 a6 6.♟e3 cxd4**

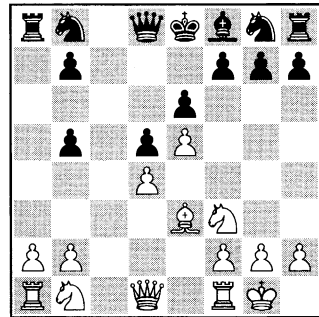
Again Black should first exchange on d4.

**7.cxd4**

Another option is 7.♟xd4 (taking with a piece on d4 has become more attractive after

Black has ‘wasted’ a tempo on ...a6) 7...♟e7 (7...♟c6 8.♟xc6 bxc6 – 8...♟xc6 – 9.♟d3 ♜b8!? 10.♜e2 ♜xe5 11.♟xa6 ♟f6 12.♟d2 ♜b8 13.♟b3 ♟d6 was excellent for Black – who later lost! – Collutiis-Drazic, Cesenatico 1998) 8.♟d3 ♟ec6!? (8...♟bc6) 9.f4 ♟xd4 10.cxd4 ♟b4+ 11.♟d2 ♟b5 12.♟xb5+ axb5 13.0-0 0-0 14.f5 exf5 15.♜xf5 ♜d7, Mukhametov-Eingorn, Berlin 1994. White is somewhat better at this stage (but he later lost).

**7...♟b5 8.♟xb5+ axb5 9.0-0**



**9...b4**

Note how reluctant Drazic is to develop his pieces. He makes sure he is getting all his useful positional moves in first.

– White gained a huge positional edge in Keitlinghaus-Bunzmann, Budapest 1997, after 9...♜d7?! 10.♜d3 b4 11.♟bd2 ♟e7 12.♟b3 ♟f5 13.♟d2 ♟c6 14.g4! ♟h6?! (14...♟fe7 15.♟c5 was the lesser evil) 15.♟xh6 gxh6 16.♟h1 ♟g8 17.h3 ♟g6 18.♟h4! ♟g7 19.♟g2 h5? 20.♟f4! hxg4 21.♟h5 winning.

– 9...♟c6 10.♟c3 b4 11.♟e2 ♟ge7 12.♟g3 (this prevents ...♟f5 so Black must change his plans) 12...♟g6 13.♟h5 f6!? 14.exf6 gxf6 15.♜d2 ♜e7!? 16.♟h6 ♟g8 17.♜fe1 ♟xh6 18.♜xh6 0-0-0 19.a3 b3! 20.♜e3 e5 21.♜ac1 ♟b8 22.♜xb3 (22.dxe5) 22...♜d6 23.♜b6 e4 24.♟d2 ♟h4 25.♟g3 f5 and Black was



better in Scavo-Drazic, Bratto 1999.

**10. ♖d3 ♜c6 11. ♜bd2 ♜ge7 12. a3**

An earlier Drazic effort saw 12. ♜b3 ♜f5 13. ♜d2 h5 14. ♜g5 ♜e7 15. ♜xe7 ♖xe7 16. ♜e1 0-0 with about even chances in Van Haastert-Drazic, Wijk aan Zee Sonnevanc 1998.

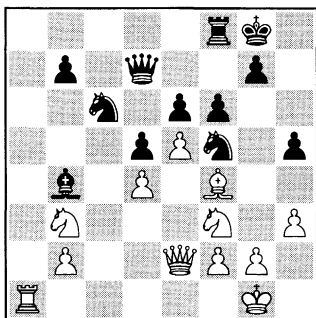
**12... ♜f5 13. axb4 ♜xb4 14. ♖b5 0-0 15. ♜b3**

Nothing much is gained by 15. ♖xb7 ♜xd2 16. ♜xd2 ♜cxd4 17. ♜xd4 ♜xd4.

**15... ♖d7 16. ♜f4 h5!? 17. h3 f6!? 18. ♖e2**

Now Black gains the initiative. 18. exf6 leads to unclear play.

**18... ♜xa1 19. ♜xa1**



**19... g5! 20. ♜c1 g4 21. hxg4 hxg4 22. ♜h2**

A better chance was 22. ♜h4 fxe5! 23. ♜g6 ♖g7!? 24. ♜xf8 ♜fxd4 25. ♜xd4 ♜xd4 followed by 26... ♜xf8.

**22... g3! 23. ♜f3**

Stronger was 23. ♖g4+ but Black is still clearly better in the ending after 23... ♖g7 24. ♖xg7+ (or 24. fxg3 ♖xg4 25. ♜xg4 fxe5 26. dxe5 ♜xg3) 24... ♜xg7 25. fxg3 fxe5 26. dxe5 ♜xe5.

**23... ♖h7! 24. ♖c2**

White loses immediately after 24. fxg3?? ♜xg3 25. ♖e3 ♖h1+ 26. ♜f2 ♜e4+.

**24... fxe5 25. fxg3 25. dxe5 ♜e1!** is very artistic: 26. ♜e1? (26. fxg3 ♜xg3 followed

by 27... ♜xe5 wins) 26... ♖h2+ 27. ♜f1 gxf2, winning the house. **25... ♜fxd4 26. ♜bxd4 ♜xd4 27. ♖xh7+ ♜xh7 28. ♜xe5** Material is still equal, but Black has a winning attack in this ending. **28... ♜e2+ 29. ♜h2 ♜f5 30. ♜f3 ♜h5+ 31. ♜h4 ♜d6!** The point. **32. ♜h3 ♜xg3 0-1**

□ Evgeny Vorobiov

■ Dmitry Chuprov

Voronezh 2005

**1. e4 c5 2. ♜f3 a6**

Note the move order via the Sicilian O'Kelly Variation. We will return to this transposition in a future SOS volume.

**3. c3 e6 4. d4 d5 5. e5 ♜d7 6. ♜bd2**

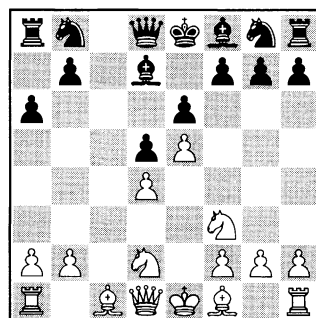
White develops a piece, but still manages to leave the bishop on f1 just as in the previous game with 6. ♜e3. The knight is passively placed on this square in structures without both c-pawns – the knight would belong on c3 then – hence, after

**6... cxd4**

it makes sense to take back with the knight on d4, to follow up with ♜2f3 to overprotect the central squares d4 and e5. Yes, Nimzowitsch still makes a lot of sense!

**7. ♜xd4**

Black is happy after 7. cxd4





Two practical examples:

– 7...♖e7 (waiting for White to move his light-squared bishop) 8.♙e2 ♘b5 9.♙xb5+ axb5 10.♖f1 ♕f5 11.♖d3 ♕c6 12.♕g3 (12.♖xb5 ♖d7 13.♖d3 (13.♙e3 ♕xe5) 13...♕b4 14.♖b3 ♖b5) 12...♕h4! 13.♕xh4 ♖xh4 14.♙e3 ♘b4+ 15.♖f1 ♙a5 with an edge in Mukhametov-Drazic, Sofia 1994.

– 7...♖b6 8.♖b3 ♖xb3 9.♕xb3 ♘b5 (Black is not afraid of doubled b-pawns, not even in the ending) 10.♙d2 (10.♙xb5+ axb5 11.♖e2 was nevertheless a better try) 10...♕c6 11.a3 (11.♙xb5) 11...♙c4 12.♕a5 (12.♙xc4 dxc4 13.♕a5 ♕xa5 14.♙xa5 ♕e7) 12...♕xa5 13.♙xa5 ♖c8 14.♖c1 ♕e7 15.♕d2 g6! 16.♖c3 ♕d7 17.♖c2 ♙g7 18.b3 ♙xf1 19.♖xf1 ♕c6 20.♙b6 f6! 21.exf6 ♙xf6 22.♕d3 ♙hf8 23.♖c2 g5 and Black's chances are to be preferred. Benev-Donchev, Elenite 1987.

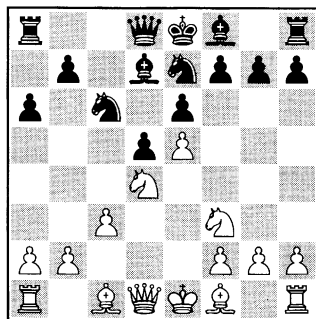
### 7...♕c6

This is more natural than 7...♕e7 8.f4 ♕bc6 9.♕d4f3! (9.♕d2f3 ♕xd4 10.♕xd4 ♕c6) 9...♕f5 10.♙d3. White is now ready to take control over the central squares with ♕b3 and ♙xf5. Eingorn therefore decides to mix it with 10...d4!? 11.♕e4 dxc3 12.bxc3 ♕a5 13.0-0 ♕c6, but objectively White was better after 14.♖e2 h5 15.♙e3 ♕xe3 16.♖xe3 ♙xe4 17.♙xe4 g6 18.♖h1 ♖c7 19.♕g5 ♙e7 20.♕xe6! fxe6 21.♙xg6+ ♕d8 22.♙ad1+ ♖c8 23.♖h3, although Black won in the game Abreu-Eingorn, World Team Championship, Yerevan 2001.

### 8.♕d2f3 ♕ge7

In D.Schneider-Nestorovic, Bar 2005, Black immediately took on d4: 8...♕xd4 9.♖xd4 ♕e7 10.♙d3 ♕c6 11.♖g4 (White's queen is well-placed here. A clear disadvantage of Black's 8th move) 11...f5 12.♖g3 (12.exf6 ♖xf6 13.♙g5 ♖f7 14.♖g3 should be better for White) 12...♖c7 13.h4 (13.0-0) 13...0-0-0 14.♙g5 ♙e7 15.♙xe7 ♕xe7

16.♕d4?! ♕c6 17.♕xc6 ♙xc6 18.0-0 g5! 19.hxg5 ♙dg8 20.♙e2 h6 21.g6 h5 with excellent counterplay.



### 9.♙f4

Nothing is gained by 9.♙d3 ♕xd4 10.cxd4 (10.♕xd4 ♕c6) 10...♙b5! 11.0-0 ♕xd3 12.♖xd3 ♕c6 13.h4 ♙e7 14.h5 h6 15.♙e3 ♖b6 16.♖fc1 ♖b5 17.♖d2 ♖b4 18.♖c2 0-0 ½-½ Baumeegger-Sommerbauer, Austrian Championship, Vienna 1999.

### 9...♕xd4

This looks more accurate than 9...♕g6 10.♙g3 ♕xd4 11.♖xd4 h5 12.h3 ♙b5 13.♙xb5+ axb5 14.0-0 with a slight edge in Sveshnikov-Drazic, Ljubljana 1997.

### 10.♖xd4

Once more 10.♕xd4 is simply met by 10...♕c6.

### 10...♖a5!? 11.♖d2 ♙b5

Again Black manages to exchange off his French bishop to obtain (at least) equal chances.

### 12.♙xb5+ ♖xb5 13.♕d4 ♖d7 14.h4 ♕c6 15.h5 ♕xd4 16.cxd4 ♖b5

Now her majesty returns to this square to prevent kingside castling.

### 17.0-0-0 ♙b4 18.♖d3 0-0 19.♖xb5 axb5

The ending is equal. The game was drawn after

### 20.♖b1 ♖fc8 21.♖c1 ♖c4 22.♙e3

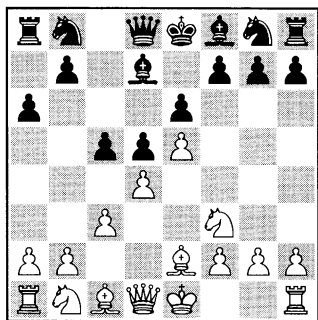


**♖ac8 23.b3 ♜xc1+ 24.♜xc1 ♜xc1+ 25.♝xc1 g6 26.hxg6 fxg6 27.♞d1 ♞f7 28.♞e2 ♙e7 29.f4 h5 30.♞f3 g5 31.fxg5 ♞g6 32.♙f2 ♙xg5 33.♙e3+ ♙f5 34.♙f2**  $\frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2}$

□ Reinhard Schischke  
 ■ Vereslav Eingorn

Berlin 1995

**1.e4 c5 2.♞f3 a6 3.c3 e6 4.d4 d5 5.e5 ♙d7 6.♙e2**



White develops his light-squared bishop and does not worry about the tempo he might lose following an eventual ♙xb5. Note that both 6.♙e2 and 6.♙d3 (the next game) may lead to the same positions when White takes the black bishop once it arrives on b5.

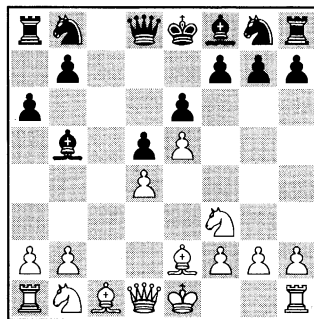
### 6...cxd4

Taking on d4 is essential before executing our strategical plan. Even fairly strong players have made the mistake to play the immediate 6...♙b5.

And, indeed, not all White players found 7.♙xb5+! axb5 8.dxc5! ♙xc5 9.b4! ♙b6 10.♞a3 and Black cannot keep his b5-pawn – White can attack b5 once more with ♜e2 or ♜d3, while Black has only one defender: the queen, which can be moved to d7.

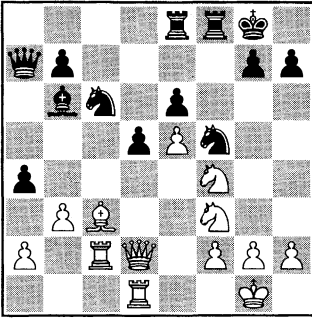
### 7.♞xd4

More popular is 7.cxd4 – after 7...♙b5



White must decide whether to take on b5, or not. We will examine 8.♙xb5+ in the next game (via the move order with 6.♙d3). After 8.0-0 (or 8.♞c3 ♙xe2 9.♞xe2 ♞c6 10.0-0 ♞ge7 11.♞g3 g6!? 12.♙g5 ♙g7 13.♜d2 h6 14.♙e3 ♜a5 with equality in Barria-Paunovic, Seville 2004) 8...♙xe2 9.♜xe2 ♞e7 Black is fine. Best is something like 10.♞c3 ♞bc6 11.♙e3 ♞f5 12.♜a1 ♙e7, and Black had an easy game in Turzo-Kerek, Hungarian Junior Championship, Paks 1998. No good is 10.♞bd2, but nevertheless we will follow the game Shulzhenko-Grunina, Cherepovets 2001, for a bit, since Grunina demonstrates an excellent understanding of Black's strategy in such positions: 10...♞bc6 11.♞b3 ♞f5 12.♙d2 ♙e7 13.♜a1 0-0 (Black has succeeded in exchanging off her bad French bishop, and she has placed her knights on the best squares c6 and f5 from where they attack d4. She now starts to increase the pressure on the queenside) 14.♜c2 ♜b6 15.♙c3 a5! 16.♜d2 a4 17.♞c1 ♜a7!? (preparing the manoeuvre ♙d8-b6 to attack the base of White's pawn chain) 18.♞e2 ♙d8 19.♜fc1 ♙b6 20.b3 f6! (now the front of the chain is attacked with this typical French move) 21.♞f4 ♜ae8 22.♜d1 fxe5 23.dxe5





and here she could have crowned her positional effort with the tactic 23...♙e3! 24.fxe3 ♗xe3 which would have won on the spot.

**7...♘e7**

Preparing ...♘bc6. Also playable is the immediate 7...♘c6.

**8.0-0**

Now 8.♘d2 would be similar to Vorobiov-Chuprov above. 8.f4 ♘bc6 9.♙e3 ♘xd4 10.cxd4 ♖b6 11.♗d2 ♙b5 12.♙xb5+ axb5 13.0-0 h5 14.♘c3 b4 15.♘e2 ♘f5 16.♙f2 ♙e7 17.♖f1 ♘d7 and Black was fine in Klovans-Jakobsen, Arvier 2006.

**8...♘bc6 9.♘xc6 ♙xc6**

Or 9...♘xc6.

**10.♘d2**

Perhaps White should have settled for 10.♙e3 ♘f5 11.♙d4.

**10...d4**

Changing the character of the position. Clearly this is not forced, and Black is fine in any case.

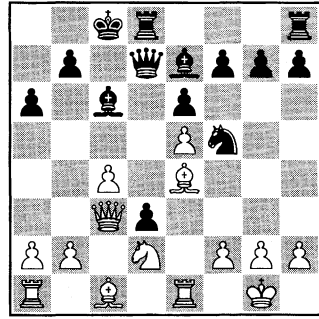
**11.c4**

11.cxd4 ♖xd4 12.♘c4 ♘f5 is OK for Black since 13.♙e3? is bad due to 13...♖e4!.

**11...d3**

The d-pawn is cutting the board into two halves. Eingorn has won a lot of space by marching forward.

**12.♙f3 ♖d4 13.♖b3 0-0-0 14.♖e1 ♖d7 15.♙e4 ♘f5 16.♖c3 ♙e7**



**17.♘b3**

Eingorn now grasps the initiative by setting up an attack along the h1-a8 diagonal.

**17...♙xe4 18.♖xe4 ♖c6 19.♖e1?**

19.f3 was a better defence.

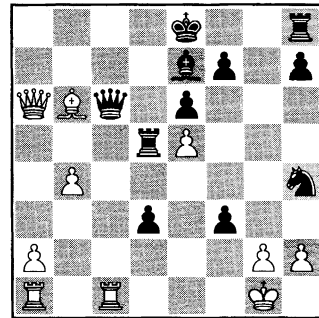
**19...g5! 20.♙e3 ♘h4 21.f3 g4**

Well-played! Eingorn uses the momentum well.

**22.♘a5 ♖c7 23.c5 ♖d5 24.b4 gxf3 25.c6 b5**

Black is winning now, so White starts a desperate 'attack'.

**26.♘c4 bxc4 27.♖xc4 ♘d8 28.♖xa6 ♙e8 29.♙b6 ♖xc6 30.♖ec1**



**30...♖c5!**

This shocker wins; it is based on the fact that 31...f2+ followed by 32...♖xg2+ cannot be prevented.

**31.♖xc5**



Or 31.bxc5 ♖g8 32.g3 f2+ 33.♗xf2 ♔f3+ 34.♗e1 ♔e2 mate.

**31...f2+ 32.♗xf2 ♔xg2+ 33.♗e3 ♔e2+ 34.♗d4 ♖f5+ 35.♗c4 d2+ 36.♗b3 ♔xa6 0-1**

□ **Zurab Azmaiparashvili**

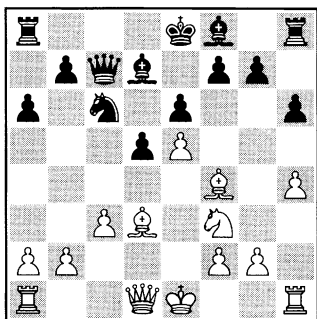
■ **Nukhim Rashkovsky**

Kiev ch-URS 1986

**1.e4 c5 2.♖f3 e6 3.c3 a6 4.d4 d5 5.e5 ♗d7 6.♗d3 cxd4 7.cxd4**

With the bishop on d3 it is actually more logical to take back with the knight than with the bishop on e2 (as in Schischke-Eingorn). 7.♖xd4 and now:

● It makes sense to prepare ...♖bc6 with 7...♖e7. A model game from Black's point of view was Schlosser-Braun, Altenkirchen 2005: 8.♖d2 ♖bc6 9.♖2f3 ♔c7 10.♖xc6 (10.♔e2) 10...♖xc6 11.♗f4 h6! 12.h4



12...d4!? 13.cxd4 ♖b4 (Black will obtain excellent compensation for the pawn) 14.a3 ♖xd3+ 15.♔xd3 ♗b5 (preventing White from castling. No one would dare to speak of a 'bad bishop' now!) 16.♔d1 ♔c6 17.♗c1 (17.d5 to return the pawn was already the best chance) 17...♔e4+ 18.♗e3 ♗e7 (now Black is just better) 19.♗c3 0-0 20.a4 ♗c6 21.0-0 ♗ac8 22.b3 ♗d5 23.♗d2 ♗xc3

24.♗xc3 ♗c8 25.♗e1 ♔g4 26.♗e3 ♗xh4! and Black won fairly quickly.

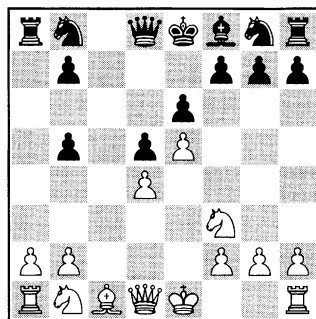
● Natural is 7...♖c6 8.♖xc6 ♗xc6 9.0-0 (or 9.♔e2 ♔d7 10.0-0 ♖e7 11.♖a3 ♖g6 12.♖c2 ♗c5 13.♗e3 ♗xe3 14.♔xe3 ♗b5 15.f4 0-0 16.♖d4 ♗xd3 17.♔xd3 f6 with equal chances in the game Sanduleac-Drazic, Subotica 2003) 9...♖e7 10.♖d2, which occurred in two internet blitz games Karjakin-Baklan. Black is perhaps slightly worse.

I would therefore give preference to Braun's move 7...♖e7.

**7...♗b5 8.♗c2**

An ambitious move. White keeps the light-squared bishop and hopes to chase away its opponent with ♖c3. If it works then he will gain a significant advantage. If his plan fails he will have allowed a monster on the diagonal f1-a6!

Important for this whole SOS line is the position after 8.♗xb5+ axb5.



As pointed out above, the diagrammed position may also occur via 6.♗e2.

Some practical examples to demonstrate that Black has few problems. After 9.0-0 Black can simply develop with 9...♖c6, but the space gaining 9...b4 – to prevent 10.♖c3 – is also good:

● 9...b4 10.♔d3 ♖c6 11.♖bd2 (Black is OK after 11.♗g5 ♖ge7 12.♖bd2 h6



13.♙xe7 ♙xe7 14.♜b3 ♖b6 15.♜fc1 0-0  
 16.♜c5 ♜fc8 Chaichi-Pashikian, Lahijan  
 2005) 11...♜ge7 12.♜b3 ♖b6 13.♙d2  
 ♖a6!? 14.♖xa6 ♜xa6 15.♜fc1 ♜c8  
 16.♜c5?! (16.♜e1) 16...♙xc5 17.♙xc5 0-0  
 18.♙f1 f6 19.exf6 gxf6 20.b3?! ♜d6 with a  
 clear edge. Cherenkova-Grunina, Serpukhov  
 2003.

● 9...♜c6 10.♜c3 b4 11.♜b5!? (uncom-  
 promising play – White will be obliged to  
 play ♜d6+ soon. Safer is 11.♜e2 ♜ge7  
 12.b3 ♜f5 13.♙g5 ♙e7 14.♙xe7 ♖xe7  
 15.♖d3 0-0 16.♜g3 ♜h4 17.♜e1 f6 18.exf6  
 ♖xf6 19.♜c2 ♜a5 and the players agreed to  
 a draw in Navrotescu-Ionescu, Romania  
 1992) 11...♜a5 12.♖d3 ♖b6 13.♜d6+  
 ♙xd6 14.exd6 ♜f6 15.♙d2 ♜e4 (15...0-0)  
 16.d7+!? ♙xd7, Duser-Sulava, Pula 1998.  
 And now 17.♜e5+ ♜xe5 18.dxe5 ♖b5  
 19.♖e3 ♜ha8 20.♜fc1!? is about equal after  
 20...♙xa2 21.♜xa2 ♜xa2 22.♖f4 (22.♙e1  
 ♜xb2 23.♖f4 ♜c3 24.♖xf7+ ♙d8=)  
 22...♙e8 23.♜c8+ ♙d7 24.♜c1 ♙e8 with a  
 repetition.

White can also opt for 8.0-0 ♜c6 9.♜c3  
 ♙xd3 10.♖xd3 ♜ge7.

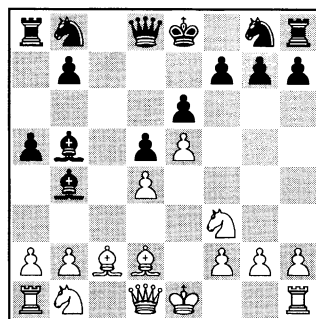
We have seen quite a few of these positions  
 by now. Black never has any problems. I  
 would advise you to play through a few of  
 the examples to see where the pieces be-  
 long.

This following game is another good model:  
 11.♜e2 ♜g6 12.♜f4 ♜xf4 13.♙xf4 ♙e7  
 14.♙d2 0-0 15.♙c3 b5 16.a3 ♖b6 17.b3  
 ♜fc8 18.♙b2 ♜c7 19.♜fc1 ♜ac8 20.h4 h5  
 21.g3 g6 22.♙g2 ♙f8 23.♙d2 ♙h6 24.f4  
 ♜e7 25.♙xc7 ♙xc7 26.♜c1 ♙xc1 27.♙xc1  
 ♜f5 28.♙b2 ♙f8 29.♜f1 ♖a5 and with his  
 superior pieces Black was clearly better in  
 Relange-Glek, Le Touquet 1993.

### 8...♙b4+

This is obligatory. Black cannot allow  
 9.♜c3.

### 9.♙d2 a5



Protecting the bishop and enabling Black to  
 withdraw his light-squared bishop to a6 if  
 necessary. Note the role of the a-pawn in  
 this game. It twice protects a bishop on the  
 b-file. Of course 9...♙xd2+? 10.♖xd2 a5  
 11.♜c3 ♙a6 12.♜e2 was never Black's in-  
 tention.

### 10.♜c3 ♙xc3!?

This is the complicated and ambitious  
 choice. Also possible is the simple 10...♙a6  
 11.♜e2 ♜c6 12.0-0 ♜ge7 13.a3 ♙xd2  
 14.♖xd2 ♖b6 15.♜f1 ♙xe2 ½-½ Aseev-  
 Eingorn, Berlin 1997.

### 11.♙xc3

Here 11.bxc3 leads to a strategically compli-  
 cated position. For example: 11...h6  
 12.♜g1!? ♜e7 13.♜e2 ♜d7 14.♜b1 ♙a6  
 15.♜f4!? g6 16.♙d3 ♙xd3 17.♜xd3 b6  
 18.a4 ♜c8 with about equal chances in  
 Andreev-Anapolsky, Alushta 2003.

### 11...♜c6

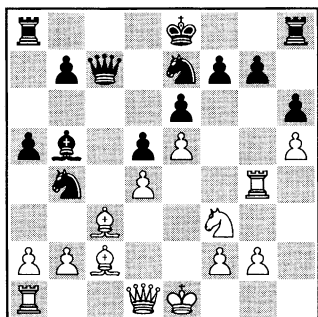
White's dilemma is clear. He will either have  
 to forget about castling for some time, or ad-  
 mit that his 8th move was too ambitious and  
 retrace his steps with ♙d3.

### 12.h4 ♜ge7 13.h5 h6 14.♜h4 ♖c7 15.♙g4

Both sides have made some typically  
 'French' moves. Now rather than play  
 15...0-0 (which is possible) Rashkovsky  
 embarks on the adventurous

### 15...♜b4!?





**16. ♖b1**

16. ♖xg7 ♜xc2+ 17. ♗xc2 ♜f5 18. ♖g4 ♗c4 is the kind of line that only a computer would seriously contemplate.

**16... ♗c4 17. ♜d2**

17. ♖xg7 ♗f1+ 18. ♜d2 ♗xf2+ 19. ♜c1 ♜f5 is hardly attractive for White.

**17... ♜d3+ 18. ♜xd3 ♗xd3**

Black has fantastic play along the light squares. The opposite-coloured bishops only fuel Black's attacking potential.

**19. a4 ♜a6 20. ♜xa5**

To have at least a pawn for his worries. Taking the other pawn on offer is wrong: 20. ♖xg7? ♜f5 21. ♖g4 loses to 21... ♜e3!.

**20... ♖c8**

Not 20... ♜f5? 21. ♖a3 and the queen is trapped.

**21. ♖a3 ♗f5 22. ♖gg3?!**

22. ♖xg7! ♗f4 and Black has compensation for his two-pawn deficit.

**22... ♗f4 23. ♜c3 ♜f5 24. ♗g4**

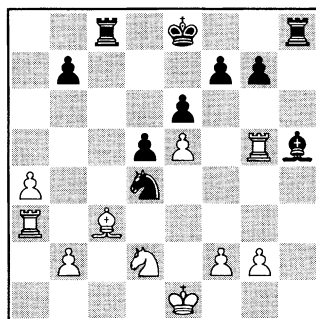
White needs to exchange queens.

**24... ♗g5 25. ♗xg5 hxg5 26. ♖xg5 ♜xd4! 27. ♜d1?!**

Not 27. ♜xd4?? ♖c1 mate. White should have

played 27. ♜e4! ♜c2+ 28. ♜d2 ♜xa3 29. ♜d6+ though.

**27... ♜e2+ 28. ♜e1 ♜xh5**



Now Black enjoys a clear edge.

**29. ♖xh5 ♜c2+ 30. ♜d1 ♖xh5 31. ♜xc2 d4 32. ♜e4**

Best was 32. ♜c4 ♖xc4 33. ♜d3 ♖c7 (the rook ending after 33... dxc3!? 34. ♜xc4 cxb2 35. ♖b3 ♖xe5 36. ♖xb2 does not win) 34. ♜xd4 ♖h1 and Black still has to work hard.

**32... ♜d7 33. ♜d6 ♖c6 34. ♜xb7 ♖xe5 35. b4 ♖xc3+ 36. ♖xc3 dxc3 37. ♜xc3 ♖e2**

The knight is bad in an ending with pawns on both flanks. Despite the fact that it is only White who has two passers on the queenside! The rest is no longer interesting for our purpose. Black won after

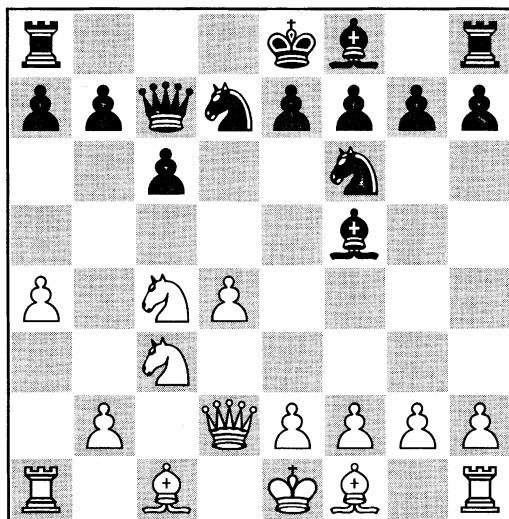
**38. ♜c5+ ♜c6 39. ♜d3 e5 40. g3?! f6 41. ♜c4 ♖c2+ 42. ♜b3 ♖e2 43. ♜c4 e4 44. ♜c5 f5 45. ♜e6 ♖c2+ 46. ♜d4 g6 47. ♜e3 ♜d6 48. ♜g5 ♖c4 49. ♜f4 ♖xb4 50. a5 ♜e7 51. a6 ♖a4 52. g4 e3+! 53. ♜xe3 ♖xg4 54. ♜f3 ♖a4 55. ♜e5? ♖e4+ 0-1**



# CHAPTER 15

## *Dorian Rogozenko*

### A Slav Surprise



Facing 7...♙c7 with 8.♙d2

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.♘f3 ♘f6 4.♘c3 dxc4 5.a4 ♗f5 6.♘e5 ♘bd7 7.♘xc4 ♙c7 8.♙d2!?**

This strange-looking move was first played in the 1930s and after a long period only in ...1998! I must confess that although I play the Slav Defence with both colours, I didn't know about the existence of 8.♙d2 until I saw the game Mikhalevski-Bareev, Turin 2006, when the Israeli GM defeated his strong opponent in the very important Olympiad match Russia-Israel. Indeed, there is practically no theory here, with a mere dozen games played so far.

A closer look at the position reveals the fact that 8.♙d2 is designed to neutralize Black's

main idea behind 7...♙c7 – the central advance ...e7-e5. It is worth noticing that by playing 7...♙c7 Black usually seeks a complicated middlegame. The variation became fashionable for Black when Morozevich started to use it with great success, outplaying his opponents in sharp middlegame positions. Well, the move 8.♙d2 completely neutralizes Black's intentions, since the active 8...e5 is no longer possible (it simply loses material after 9.dxe5 followed by 10.♙f4). Moreover, in what can be considered the main line of 8.♙d2 White achieves a slightly better endgame, which can be quite annoying for an aggressive opponent. After 8.♙d2 in many cases White succeeds to



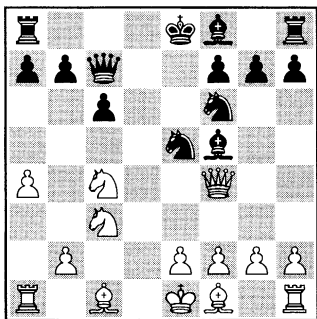
exchange a knight for a bishop, forcing Black to either play something risky (this is what Bareev did against Mikhalevski), or try to defend an inferior position. In our main game below the European Women Champion of 2006 went for an apparently solid endgame, but the ex-World Women Champion demonstrated the power of the bishop pair and went on to crush Black in great style.

□ Maia Chiburdanidze  
 ■ Ekaterina Polovnikova  
 Krasnoturinsk 2004

**1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.♘f3 ♘f6 4.♙c3 dxc4 5.a4 ♙f5 6.♙e5 ♘bd7 7.♙xc4 ♖c7 8.♖d2 e6**

The most natural reply. Let's see what other moves were tried in practice.

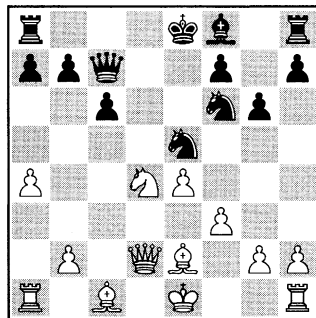
– As mentioned 8...e5? loses: 9.dxe5 ♘xe5 10.♖f4



10...♙f5 11.♖xf5 ♘xc4 12.♖e4+ ♙ce5 13.f4 f5 14.♖xf5 winning material.

– 8...g6. The main idea behind this move is to protect bishop f5 and to prepare ...e7-e5. 9.f3 e5 (9...♙g7? loses material after 10.e4 ♙e6 11.d5 cxd5 12.exd5 ♙f5 13.♙b5 ♖b8 14.g4 ♙e5 15.♙xe5 ♖xe5+ 16.♖e2 ♖xe2+ 17.♙xe2) 10.e4 exd4 (10...♙e6? 11.d5+-) 11.♙e2 ♙e6 12.♙xd4 ♙xc4 13.♙xc4 (so af-

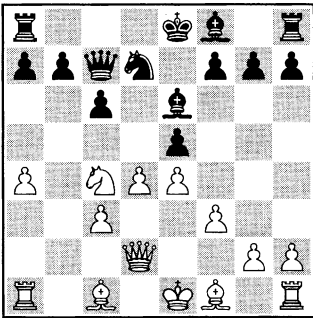
ter all Black couldn't keep both bishops on the board. However, before talking about a clear advantage, White still needs to finish his development) 13...♙e5 14.♙e2



14...0-0 (Bareev is rightly trying to complicate matters, as after 14...♙g7 15.♖c2! 0-0 16.0-0 ♖ad8 17.♙e3 thanks to the bishop pair White has a clear advantage) 15.♖c3 ♙g7 (15...a5 16.♙c2±) 16.♙e3 ♙eg4!? (in case of 16...♖he8 White can avoid tactical ideas from Black by continuing either 17.0-0 followed by 18.♙b1, or play for a bigger advantage with 17.♖d1 preparing to castle short. Then in order to avoid a much worse middlegame Black must sacrifice a piece: 17...♙eg4 18.fxf4 ♙xe4, although after 19.♖c1 ♖a5+ 20.♙f1 it remains unclear if Black will be able to prove sufficient compensation) 17.fxf4 ♙xe4 18.♖c4 ♖he8 (18...♖a5+ 19.b4 ♖e5 20.♖d1 ♙g3 21.hxg3 ♖xe3 22.♖d3 ♖e7 23.♙c2±) 19.0-0 (19.♖a3 is another possibility, when Black has nothing better than 19...♙d2 but in the resulting position after 20.♙xd2 ♖xe3 21.♙xe3 ♖xd4 22.♖xd4 ♙xd4+ 23.♙xd4 White's prospects are preferable) 19...♙e5 20.♖d3 ♖c5? (obligatory was 20...♙c5, with good chances to escape after 21.♖c3 ♖xd4 22.♙xd4 ♖xd4 23.♙f3±) 21.♙c2! ♖e5 22.♙xd8+ ♖xd8 23.♖b3 (now White is just a piece up) 23...♙d2 24.♙xd2 ♖xe2



25.♙g5 ♖d3 26.♗b4 ♗xg2 27.♚e1 b6  
 28.♚e8+ ♖b7 29.♗e7+ ♖a6 30.♜b4+ 1-0,  
 Mikhalevski-Bareev, Turin Olympiad 2006.  
 – 8...♙g6 9.♗f4 (9.g3 is another option)  
 9...♗xf4 10.♙xf4 ♘d5 11.♙g3 h5 (11...♜b4  
 12.0-0-0±) 12.f3 ♜7b6 13.♙e5 ♙h7 14.a5  
 ♜b4 15.♙c1 ♘d7 16.e4 ♘xe5 17.♙xe5 f6  
 (17...♙d8 18.d5!±) 18.♙f4 ♖d8 19.♙e3  
 with a slight but pleasant advantage in  
 P.Cramling-Hamelink, English Team  
 Championship 2005/06.  
 – 8...♘d5 9.f3 e5 10.e4 ♘xc3 11.bxc3 ♙e6



Now 12.d5 cxd5 13.exd5 ♙f5 14.d6 ♗c6  
 15.♙a3 a6 16.♙b4 g6 was double-edged in  
 Elianov-Rodshtein, Ashdod 2004. There-  
 fore White may prefer 12.♙e2, when he en-  
 joys a slight pull after 12...♖d8 (not  
 12...♙e7? 13.d5 cxd5 14.exd5 ♙f5  
 15.d6+–) 13.0-0 ♙e7 14.♗c2 0-0 15.♙e3.  
 – 8...♜b6 9.♙e5 e6 (9...♜bd7 10.♗f4!?±)  
 10.f3 ♖d8 (10...0-0-0?! 11.e4 ♙g6 12.♗f2  
 ♜bd7 13.♜c4 ♜b6 14.♙e3 and the black  
 king might become a target for attack in the  
 future) 11.e4 ♙g6 12.♗f2 ♜bd7 and now in  
 the game Kekelidze-Pitl, Deizisau 2006, in-  
 stead of 13.♙f4 ♘xe5 14.♙xe5 ♗a5 with  
 some activity for Black, White had to con-  
 tinue 13.♜c4 e5 (13...♜b6 14.♙e3±)  
 14.dxe5 ♘xe5 (or 14...♙c5 15.♜d6+! ♖f8  
 16.♙e3 ♙xe3 17.♗xe3 ♘xe5 18.♜c4±)  
 15.♙e3 and White is again slightly better.

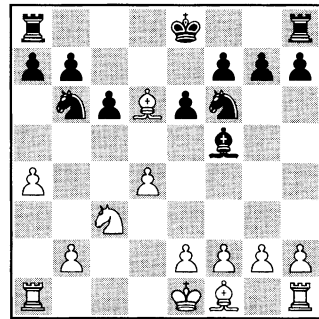
## 9.♗f4

This is the point behind d White's set-up.  
 With the knight on c4 White is able to use the  
 weakness of square d6. The next moves are  
 more or less forced.

## 9...♗xf4

After 9...0-0-0 10.♗xc7+ ♖xc7, besides  
 11.♙f4+ White can also consider 11.f3!?  
 ♖c8 12.e4 ♙g6 13.a5, with advantage.

10.♙xf4 ♜b6 11.♜d6+ ♙xd6  
 12.♙xd6



If White will succeed to complete develop-  
 ment and consolidate the position, her ad-  
 vantage will become obvious.

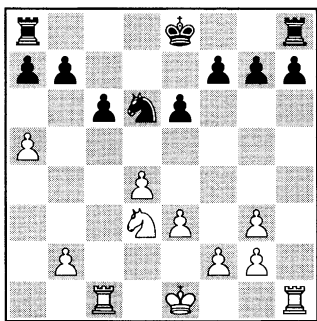
## 12...0-0-0

Two years after the present game, in the tour-  
 nament that became her biggest achieve-  
 ment so far, Ekaterina played 12...♜c4.  
 Then in Dzagnidze-Atalik, Kusadasi 2006,  
 (in 2006 Ekaterina Polovnikova married the  
 Turkish GM Suat Atalik and changed her  
 name) White retreated the bishop to f4 –  
 13.♙f4 – allowing 13...♘d5!. Then after  
 14.e4 ♘xf4 Nana Dzagnidze went for an in-  
 teresting pawn sacrifice: 15.♙xc4 (the sim-  
 ple 15.exf5 ♜xb2 16.♖b1 ♜bd3+ 17.♙xd3  
 ♜xd3+ 18.♘d2 ♜f4 19.g3 followed by  
 20.♖xb7 deserves attention) 15...♜xg2+  
 16.♖e2 ♙g4+ 17.f3 ♙h5 18.h4 ♖d8  
 19.♖ad1 h6 20.♖h2 ♜f4+ 21.♖e3 ♜g6  
 22.♖e2 e5 23.d5 ♜e7 24.♜g3 ♙g6 25.h5



♙h7 26.♚hd2 and the sharp battle ended in a draw later on.

In fact 12...♙c4 must be answered by 13.♙g3! (in P.Schmidt-Stahlberg, Pärnu 1937, 13.♙a3 proved less strong) and White keeps an edge in the endgame 13...♙c2 (this somewhat extravagant move is rather a necessity. 13...♙xb2? loses a piece after 14.♚a2 ♙c4 15.e4; 13...♙g6 is a big advantage for White after 14.e4 ♙b6 (14...♙xb2 15.♚a2+; 14...♙a5 15.♚a3! b6 16.b4 ♙b7 17.♙a6 ♙d8 18.f3±) 15.a5 ♙bd7 16.f3) 14.e3 (14.e4 ♙a5! using the unprotected pawn on d4) 14...♙b3 (now 14...♙a5? is bad in view of 15.b4 ♙b3 16.♚a2 and Black will lose the knight on b3) 15.♙e2!? (good is also 15.a5±) 15...♙a5 (15...♙xb2 16.♚b1 ♙d3+ 17.♙d2±; 15...♙e4? 16.♙c1+—) 16.♙c1 ♙c4 (16...♙d5 17.f3 ♙c4 18.♙d3! ♙d5 19.♙f2±) 17.♙xc4 (after 17.♙d3 Black probably equalizes with 17...♙b3 18.♚d1 ♙e4 19.♙f4 g5) 17...♙xc4 18.♙d3 ♙e4 19.♚c1 ♙xg3 20.hxg3 ♙d6 21.a5



The space advantage together with the possibility to use square c5 for the knight and pressure on both wings secures White a small, but long-lasting edge. However, perhaps something like this is what Black should be aiming for from the previous diagrammed position.

### 13.♙c5

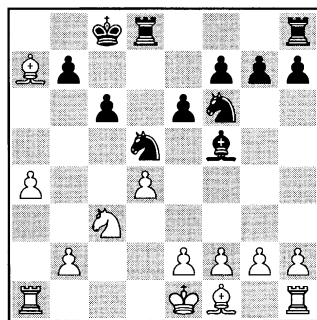
White's dark-squared bishop is a very important piece. Now it exerts pressure on the diagonal a7-g1, threatening 14.a5 followed by 15.♙xa7. Notice that the bishop is also a good defender for pawn d4.

### 13...♙b8

This natural desire to protect pawn a7 allows White to build a strong center and conveniently finish his development. However, it is not clear what Black should do instead.

● White's chances are preferable following the sacrifice of pawn a7:

13...♙bd5 14.♙xa7 (here 14.♙xd5 ♙xd5 15.e3 b6 16.♙a3 a5! doesn't look like a real advantage for White)



– Not good is 14...♙b4: 15.0-0-0 ♙g4 16.e4 ♙xf2 (16...♙g6 17.♚d2+—) 17.exf5 ♙xh1 18.fxe6 fxe6 19.♙c5 ♙d5 20.♙e4 b6 (20...♙e3 21.♚e1 ♙g4 22.♙c4±) 21.♙a3 ♙e3 22.♙a6+ ♙b8 23.♚xh1 ♚xd4 24.♙c3 and the two bishops are much stronger than the rook and pawn.

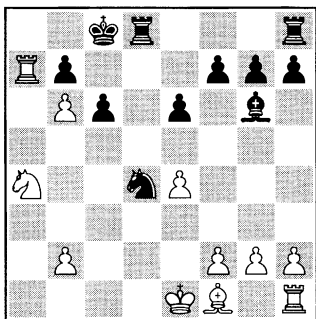
– After 14...b6 there follows a long tactical sequence: 15.a5 ♙b7 (15...♙b4 16.0-0-0 bxa5 17.♙b6 ♚d7 18.♙xa5 ♙bd5 19.♙xd5 cxd5 20.f3±) 16.♙xb6 (16.axb6 ♙b4 17.0-0-0 ♙g4 18.e4 ♙xf2 19.exf5 is very unclear) 16...♙xb6 17.axb6 ♚xd4 (17...♙xb6 18.e3±; 17...♙a8 18.♙a4!±) 18.♙a7+ ♙xb6 19.♚xf7 ♙a8 20.f3 ♙a1+ 21.♙f2 ♙b4 22.g4 ♙g6 23.♚xg7 ♙xb2 24.♙g2 ♙a3 (24...♚xh1 25.♙a4+! ♙b5 26.♙xb2 ♚b1 (26...♚xh2?



27.♔g3 ♖h6 28.e4 is disastrous for Black) 27.h4!±) 25.♖c1 and Black does not have sufficient compensation for the pawn.

Note that the attempt to chase away the bishop from c5 is more difficult than it may seem.

● For instance 13...♟fd7 leads by force to a difficult position for Black: 14.a5 ♟xc5 (14...♟d5 15.♟xd5 exd5 16.♟xa7 ♟c7 17.e3 ♖a8 18.♟c5±) 15.axb6 ♟b3 16.♖xa7 ♟xd4 17.e4 ♟g6 18.♟a4! White has a mating attack in the endgame.



The knight comes to c5 and Black is in trouble. Checking the white king brings nothing: 18...♟c2+ 19.♟e2 ♟d4+ 20.♟e3 ♟c2+ 21.♟f4 e5+ 22.♟g3 winning.

**14.f3!**

Right in time for e2-e4. The next part of the game is a perfect illustration of the superiority of bishops over knights.

**14...♖he8 15.e4 ♟g6 16.♟e2 e5?**

Black should have continued to wait in passivity, even if White's advantage is beyond question in that case as well. This attempt to get some air for the pieces quickly backfires. Notice the psychological background: in the present opening variation Black subconsciously aims for the central advance ...e5, but that's it – 8.♖d2 makes the difference: Black must usually forget his initial intentions.

**17.dxe5 ♖xe5 18.♟e3!**

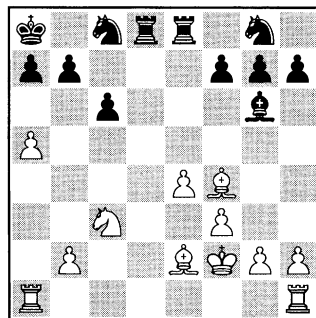
The bishop switches to the diagonal b8-h2. Notice that due to the absence of his

dark-squared bishop there is nothing Black can do to neutralize the activity of her opponent's bishop.

**18...♖ee8 19.♟f2 ♟g8**

The knights are very poor and Black wants to create some targets for attack by means of ...f7-f5. This obviously cannot help anymore.

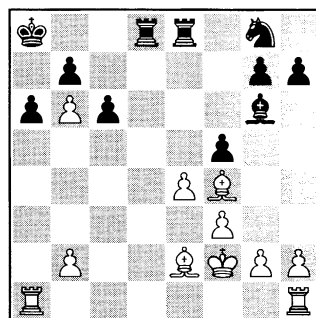
**20.♟f4+ ♖a8 21.a5 ♟c8**



**22.♟a4!**

Suddenly everything will end with a direct attack. All white pieces coordinate perfectly.

**22...f5 23.♟b6+ ♟xb6 24.axb6 a6**



**25.♖xa6+! bxa6 26.♟xa6**

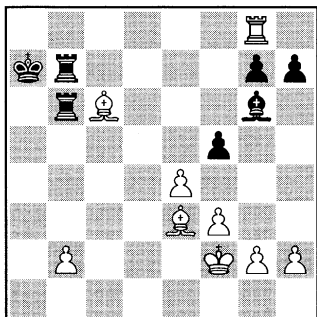
White wins in all variations. The direct threat is 27.♖a1 followed by 28.♟c8 mate!

**26...fxe4**

Or 26...♖e7 27.♖a1 ♖dd7 28.b7+ ♟xb7 29.♟b5+! ♖a7 30.♟xc6+ ♟b7 31.♖d1! ♖a6



32.♖d8+ ♔a7 33.♙e3+ ♜ab6 34.♞xg8 and Black is dead-lost.



This position deserves a diagram.

After 26...fxe4 Black is quickly mated following:

**27.♞a1 e3+ 28.♙e1**

Black resigned. A wonderful game of Maia, reminding of her best years.

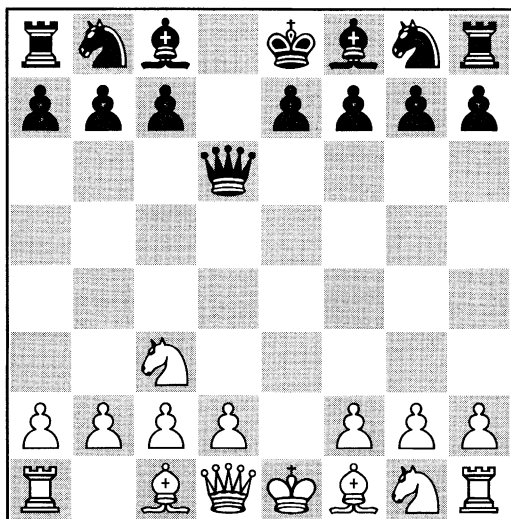
The conclusion must be that in this popular Slav line 8.♞d2 has great surprise value. The queen move slows down Black's aggressive intentions in the opening, and, thanks to the possibility to obtain the bishop pair, contains potential for activity in the endgame.



# CHAPTER 16

## *Sergey Tiviakov*

### Scandinavian with 3...♔d6



A slip of the hand?

Everything started in August 2005. I was playing in an open tournament in Solsona (Spain). I was White against a Cuban player Omar Almeida, and after a mere 11 moves I was lost. Luckily for me my draw offer on move 12 was accepted by my opponent.

□ Sergey Tiviakov

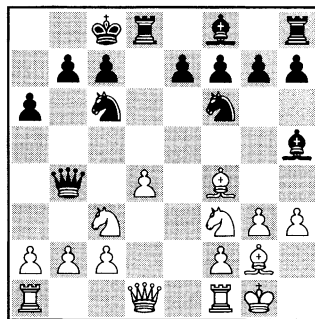
■ Omar Almeida

Solsona 2005

1.e4 d5 2.exd5 ♔xd5 3.♘c3 ♔d6  
4.d4 ♘f6 5.♘f3 a6 6.g3 ♘g4 7.h3  
♘h5 8.♘g2 ♘c6 9.0-0 0-0-0 10.♘f4?!

After the correct 10.♘e3 e5 an equal ending arises almost by force.

10...♔b4



11.d5?

After this mistake White loses material.

11...e6 12.a3

½-½



Well, this was a very useful experience for me. I thought, if I can get a lost position with white so quickly (and I have to admit that I had even studied this variation regularly before as White) then why could the same thing not happen to other strong players?! So, I decided to work on this line to incorporate the Scandinavian Defence into my repertoire. After my return from Spain there were still three weeks left and I prepared it for the 2005 Dutch championship, my immediate tournament after Solsona.

Erik van den Doel was my first 'victim'. After I played 1...d5 it was quite funny to see the reaction on Erik's face. He thought my hand had slipped and that I had made a wrong pawn move – 1...d5 instead of 1...c5.

□ Erik van den Doel

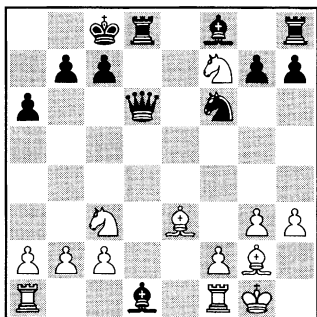
■ Sergey Tiviakov

Leeuwarden ch-NED 2005 (2)

1.e4 d5 2.exd5 ♖xd5 3.♟c3 ♖d6  
4.d4 ♟f6 5.♟f3 a6 6.g3 ♟g4 7.h3  
♟h5 8.♟g2 ♟c6 9.0-0 0-0-0 10.♟e3

Erik van den Doel played better than I did against Almeida and after a big think (one hour!) he found the way to exchange into an equal ending.

10...e5 11.dxe5 ♟xe5 12.♟xe5 ♟xd1  
13.♟xf7



13...♟xc2

Black has to return the queen otherwise he stands much worse.

14.♟xd6+ ♟xd6

The ending is equal.

15.♖ac1 ♟g6 16.♟a4 ♟e4 17.♟b6+  
♟b8 18.♟c4 ♟xg2 19.♟xg2 ♟e7  
20.♖fd1 ♖he8 1/2-1/2

Until then I had only played the Sicilian Defence (Maroczy and Dragon systems) with a few games with 1...c6 thrown in for good measure. And after long – long years of playing everyone got used to it. Frankly speaking, I also got tired of playing the same old lines over and over again. So the Scandinavian Defence came as a welcome change. In the Dutch championship I played two more games with the Scandinavian, they all ended in draws.

The next real test of my Scandinavian Defence came in the Wijk aan Zee 2006 tournament. Against Anand and Kamsky I took 1½ points out of 2. Both of my opponents were not able to get out of the opening normally. Anand was able to make a draw, but Kamsky lost. It reminded me a lot of my experience against Almeida, only this time I could be found behind the black pieces.

Subsequently, I drew Grischuk and Svidler; obtaining a huge advantage from the opening against the former.

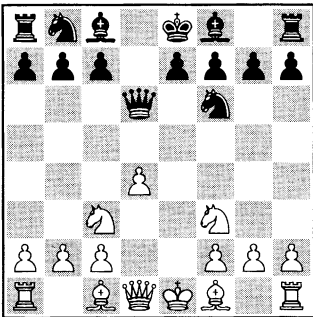
The main advantage of the variation is the lack of theory. All sorts of moves are possible and they are all playable. What I like most is the fact that the player who plays better wins!

Now let us look at the main ideas and plans in this system. The main principle in this line for Black is to try to finish the development of his pieces as quickly as possible. If he manages to do that he can rarely be worse.



Black's bishops deserve special treatment: first the c8-bishop must develop, then it is the turn of the f8-bishop! Actually, in both of my games against Anand and Grischuk (funny games!) I was never able to develop them. In the game against Anand the f8-bishop made its first move on the 40th move. Versus Grischuk it wasn't touched at all. Despite that Black was much better in both games.

After 3.♘c3 ♖d6 White has many different ways to develop his pieces. We'll focus our attention here on 4.d4 ♘f6 5.♙f3 since after all other moves Black can equalize without many problems.



In the position in the diagram Black has two main answers:

- I 5...c6
- II 5...a6

Both of them are equally playable and were tested by me in tournament practice.

### Variation I

5...c6 leads to much more forced play than 5...a6. The difference lies in the fact that after 6.♗e5 Black has no 6...♗c6 at his disposal.

White has to play 6.♗e5, otherwise Black

himself plays ...♗g4 or ...♗f5, once and for all solving the problem of his c8-bishop, equalising relatively easily. After 6.♗e5 ♘bd7 7.♘c4 (7.♗f4 ♘d5 is equal as in Anand-Tiviakov, Wijk aan Zee 2006) 7...♖c7 8.♖f3 ♘b6 White is slightly better. Nevertheless, not only Black but also White has to play carefully.

□ Alexander Grischuk

■ Sergey Tiviakov

Sochi tt 2006

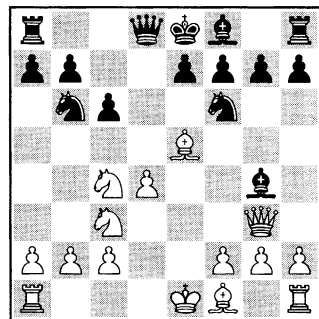
1.e4 d5 2.exd5 ♖xd5 3.♘c3 ♖d6 4.d4 ♘f6 5.♙f3 c6 6.♗e5 ♘bd7 7.♘c4

In Anand-Tiviakov, Wijk aan Zee 2006, Black soon obtained a decent game following 7.♗f4 ♘d5! 8.♘xd5 ♖xd5 9.♗e2 ♗xe5 10.♗xe5 ♖xg2 11.♗f3 ♖g6 12.d5? (better was 12.♖e2!?) 12...♗g4 13.dxc6 bxc6 14.♖e2 ♗xf3 15.♖xf3 ♖d8.

7...♖c7 8.♖f3 ♘b6 9.♗f4

Here 9.♗e5 is another critical move.

9...♖d8 10.♗e5 ♗g4 11.♖g3



### 11...h5

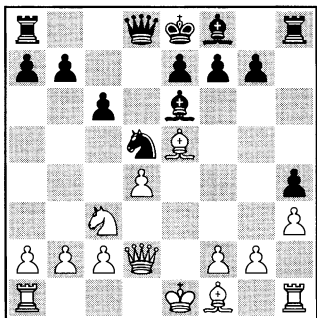
A very important position for the assessment of the whole line with 5...c6.

### 12.f3

A new move. Yet, 12.h3 was better. There were lots of games played with it.



After 12...h4 13.♖f4 ♕e6 14.♗e3 ♖bd5 15.♗exd5 ♗xd5 16.♖d2 a critical position has been reached.



● Black may opt for 16...♗f5 when practice has seen:

– 17.♗d3 ♗xd3 18.♖xd3 e6 (18...♗xc3 19.bxc3± Kotronias-Ardelean, Kavala 2004) 19.0-0 ♗e7!? 20.♖fe1 ♗g6 21.♗h2 ♗d6 22.♗xd6 ♖xd6 23.♗e4 and White was better in N.Kosintseva-Nikolaidis, Moscow 2005.

– 17.♗c4 e6 18.♗xd5 exd5 19.♗d3 ♗xd3 20.♖xd3 f6! 21.♖g6+ ♗e7 22.♗f4 ♖e8 23.♖d3 ♗f7+ 24.♗d2 ♖e4 with equality in Skembris-Nikolaidis, Athens ch-GRE 2004.

● An alternative is 16...♗xc3 17.♖xc3 (17.bxc3!? ♖d5 18.♖e3 gives White the initiative according to Nikolaidis, but Black has 18...♗f5! planning ...♖e4) 17...♗d5 (17...♖d5!?) 18.♖d2 (18.0-0 e6 19.♗b1 b5∞) 18...e6 19.c4 ♗e4 20.f3 (20.0-0-0!? was preferable) 20...♗f5 21.a3 (21.0-0-0 is equal) 21...♖h5 (21...f6 22.♗f4 g5 (or 22...♗d6=) 23.♗e3 ♖c7 is equal) 22.♖d1 ♗d6 (22...g6!?) 23.♖e3 Hossain-Tiviakov, Turin Olympiad 2006. And now 23...♖e7 planning to castle queenside would have been equal.

## 12...♗e6

12...h4 is a worthwhile alternative.

## 13.♗e3

13.♗xb6!? ♖xb6 14.0-0-0 0-0-0 (14...h4!?)

leads to an unclear position. Wrong is 13.♗c7?! ♖xd4 14.♖d1 ♖c5 which just gives up the pawn.

## 13...♗bd5

Or 13...♗f5.

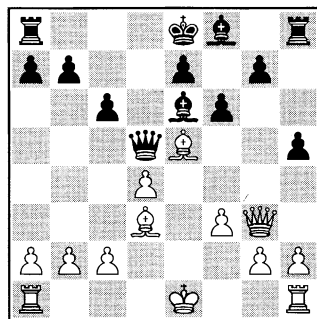
## 14.♗cxd5 ♗xd5 15.♗xd5

In case of 15.♖f2 f6 the bishop is awkwardly placed on e5.

## 15...♖xd5 16.♗d3

After 16.c3 ♗f5 the position is equal; or 16...h4 17.♖f2 (17.♖f4 f6 – 17...0-0-0= – 18.♗c7 g5 19.♖e3 ♗f5 20.h3 ♖d7 21.♗h2 0-0-0∞) 17...h3 18.g3 0-0-0 also with equal chances.

## 16...f6



## 17.♗b8?!

White goes too far in his desire to play for a win. After the correct 17.♗f4 ♗f5 18.♗xf5 (18.0-0-0?! ♖xa2 19.♗xf5 ♖a1+ 20.♗d2 ♖a5+±) 18...♖xf5 19.c3 (19.♗e3 ♖xc2±) 19...h4 20.♖g4 ♖xg4 21.fxg4 an equal ending appears on the board.

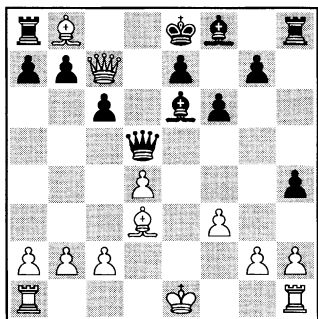
Alternatively, 17.♗c7 ♗f7 (17...h4!?) 18.♖f2 ♖e6+ 19.♗e2 (19.♖e2=) 19...♖d7 20.♗g3 (20.♗f4 ♖f5 21.♗e3 ♖xc2±) 20...0-0-0 with complex play and chances for both sides was also playable.

## 17...h4!

17...♖a5+ 18.c3 h4 19.♖c7 ♖xc7 20.♗xc7 ♗f7 is equal. But I already wanted more than just equality!

## 18.♖c7



**18...♖f7!**

A very strong and paradoxical move! Now it becomes clear that White's pieces are stuck in the black camp.

**19.♖xb7**

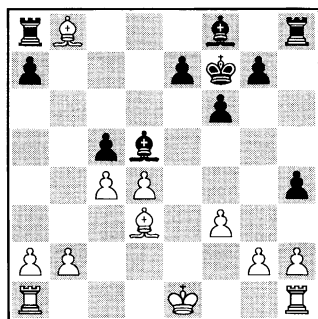
19.0-0-0? loses after 19...g6! (19...h3 20.g4 ♖d6 21.♖xd6 exd6 22.♗c7 b6, ♗c7<) 20.c4 (20.f4 ♗h6 21.c4 ♖d8+) 20...♖d6 21.♖xd6 exd6 22.♗c7 b6.

**19...c5! 20.♖xd5**

Impossible for White is 20.♖b5? c4.

**20...♗xd5 21.c4**

Black is slightly better in the ending after both 21.♗f4 cxd4 and 21.♗c7 cxd4.

**21...♗xf3?!**

A mistake based on the wrong assessment of the sharp ending where Black has an extra pawn but falls behind in the development. After the correct 21...♗b7 22.♗c7 (22.♗f4

cxd4 23.♗e2 e5) 22...cxd4 (22...h3 23.d5 hgx2 24.♗g1 e6 25.dxe6+ ♗xe6 26.♗f2±) 23.♗e2 e5 24.♗a5 ♗e6 Black keeps the advantage due to the strong pawn centre.

21...♗xb8 22.cxd5 cxd4 23.0-0 is unclear.

**22.♗xa7 ♗xg2 23.♗g1 ♗xa6 24.♗xg2 cxd4 25.♗g6+ ♗g8 26.c5**

Here Grischuk offered me a draw which I accepted. There are so many possibilities: 26...♗h6; 26...h3, 26...e5. And even now I can't say who is better here. The position is unclear.

**Variation II**

5...a6 gives White more options than 5...c6. Since 6.♗e5 leads to nothing after 6...♗c6 White has to look for other ways.

Until recently the most dangerous move for Black was considered to be 6.g3. But I have discovered some new ideas, which can be found in my annotated games against Svidler and Al-Modiahki.

Frankly speaking, at this moment I don't see any clear way to get an opening advantage in this line of the Scandinavian Defence.

□ Gata Kamsky  
 ■ Sergey Tiviakov  
 Wijk aan Zee 2006

**1.e4 d5**

A lot has been written on the Internet about my choice of the 'dubious' Scandinavian Defence in a tournament of the highest level. But the reputation of the Scandinavian Defence is much worse than the positions arising from it. What else can be worse than the positions arising in the Dragon where Black can lose by force?! Also the Scandinavian Defence is mostly played by weaker players, that's why the statistics don't favour Black, but it doesn't reflect the actual way of life here.

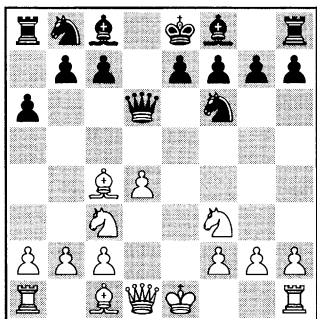


**2.exd5**

Strangely enough my choice of the Scandinavian came as a full surprise for Gata. He sank into thinking for almost half an hour before making this move. Quite strange, I think.

**2...♖xd5 3.♘c3 ♖d6 4.d4 ♘f6 5.♙c4** Anand played 5.♘f3 here, but there is not much theory anyway. White can make any normal move.

**5...a6 6.♘f3**

**6...♙g4!?**

Not the only good move in the position, but since Kamsky was not ready theoretically I wanted to provoke him to play aggressively by h2-h3 and g2-g4, trying to win this game.

**7.h3 ♙h5 8.g4**

White has to play this move otherwise it is not easy to get rid of the pin.

**8...♙g6 9.♘e5**

Here 9.♙e3, followed by ♖d2, 0-0-0, deserved serious attention. After the text Black develops his knight a tempo.

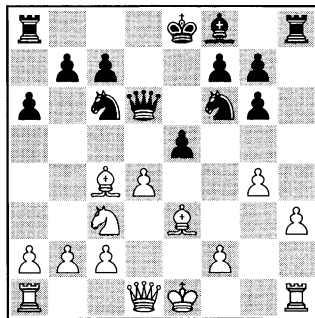
**9...♘c6 10.♘xg6**

10.♙f4 ♘xe5, followed by ...♖c6 is bad for White.

**10...hxg6 11.♙e3?!** 

After this move White starts to experience some problems. The correct 11.g5 should first have been played, and only then 12.♙e3. The knight f6 is not only driven

from the excellent f6-square, but even more importantly the pawn g4 is no longer hanging.

**11...e5****12.d5**

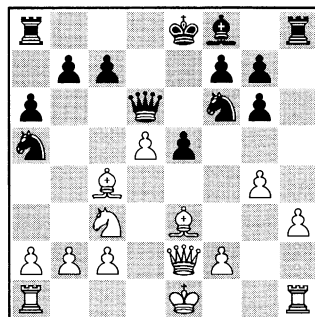
Only this is new, but White position is already worse.

**12...♘a5**

Probably, this move was missed by Gata. The knight stands badly on a5, but with concrete play Black wins a pawn.

**13.♖e2!?**

13.♙e2 0-0-0 14.♖d2 (14.g5 ♘xd5 15.♖xd5 ♖xd5 16.♘xd5 ♖xd5 17.♙d1 ♖xd1+ 18.♘xd1 ♙d6 and Black was a pawn up and won in Hakki-Tiviakov, Amman 2006) 14...♘xd5 15.0-0-0 should have been preferred. White has some compensation for the pawn.





**13...♟xc4**

The simplest. Instead 13...♞b4?! 14.♙b3 ♞xc4 15.hxg4 ♞xh1+ 16.♟d2 ♞xa1 leads to unnecessary complications.

**14.♞xc4 b5**

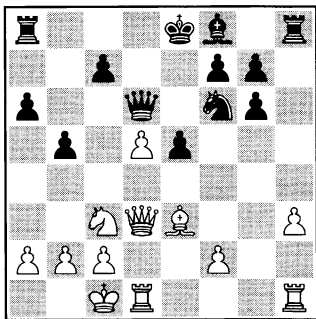
White can't defend both pawns d5 and g4 simultaneously.

**15.♞d3**

15.♞c6+ ♞xc6 16.dxc6 ♟xg4 is better for Black. While the second player is winning after 15.♞e2 b4 16.♟b1 ♞xd5.

**15...♟xg4 16.0-0-0 ♟f6**

16...♟xe3!? 17.fxex3 (or 17.♞xe3 ♟e7) 17...f5 was also possible, with advantage for Black.

**17.f4!**

A very strong move, underestimated by me. White sacrifices a second pawn for the initiative. Otherwise Black would play ♟f8-e7 and finish his development comfortably.

**17...exf4?!**

The computer gives 17...0-0-0 as the best move with a large advantage for Black, but during the game I was afraid to make this move.

**18.♟e4 ♟xe4 19.♞xe4+ ♟e7**

19...♟d7?! 20.♟xf4 ♞h4 21.♞hf1 (Black wins after 21.♞d4? ♞f6!) unfortunately doesn't work for Black.

**20.♟d4?!**

After 20.♟xf4 ♞h4 21.♟xd6 ♞xe4 22.♟xc7

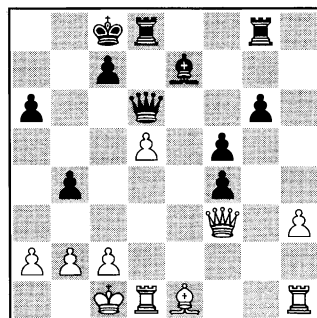
♟d7 Black is clearly better in the ending, but White should nevertheless have gone for this line, since Black has no material advantage at least. I was surprised that Kamsky played 20.♟d4 without much thinking.

**20...f5 21.♞f3 0-0-0**

Black has to castle queenside. His king is not safe anymore, White gets counterplay.

**22.♟xg7?!**

After 22.♞he1 ♟h4 (22...♞xd5 23.♞xd5 ♞xd5 24.♞xe7 ♞hd8 25.♞xg7 ♞xd4 26.♞xd4 ♞xd4 27.♞xg6 is not clear, White keeps drawing chances in an ending) 23.♟e5 ♞d7 24.♞e2 g5 Black keeps his material advantage

**22...♞hg8 23.♟c3 b4 24.♟e1****24...g5?**

A serious mistake which costs Black several tempi. After the correct 24...♞ge8! followed by ♟f6, ♞e4, Black should win without many problems.

**25.♞d3!**

I missed this move. Now Black has to spend some time to protect the pawn on f5 and develop the bishop to f6 and rook to e4, worsening the position of king c8 (put it on b7).

**25...♞gf8 26.♟f2 ♟b7 27.♞he1 ♟f6 28.♞f3?**

After this mistake (Gata was already in time-trouble) Black is back on the winning track.



But even after the strongest 28.♖c4 ♜fe8 29.♙c5 ♜d7 followed by ♜b5 Black should eventually win because of the extra passed pawns on the kingside.

**28...♜fe8 29.♜f1**

Gata missed that 29.♜e6 ♜xe6 30.dxe6+ ♜c6 loses.

**29...♜e4**

The rest should be an easy win for Black. But since both of the players didn't have much time until the time control, there were mistakes, which eventually didn't change the correct outcome of this game.

**30.♙b1 ♜e5**

30...g4! 31.hxg4 ♜e5 32.♜b3 fxd4 is an easy win for Black.

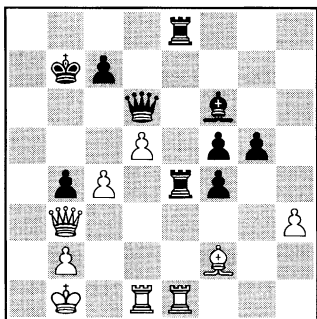
**31.♜b3 a5 32.c3 ♜d6 33.a3 ♜a8!?**

Black is spoiled for choice with so many possibilities.

**34.axb4 axb4 35.♜fe1 ♜ae8**

35...♙c8 36.c4 ♜a6 wins easily.

**36.c4**



**36...♜xe1!?**

Here I saw a nice trap for White and decided to go for this line.

**37.♙xe1**

37.♜xe1 ♜xe1+ 38.♙xe1 ♜b6 is hopeless for White.

**37...♜e2 38.♙xb4?**

This loses by force. Instead 38.♙d2 was better.

**38...♜b6 39.c5 ♜b5 40.c6+ ♙b8!**

The point of the trap! 40...♙c8 draws after 41.d6!! cxd6 42.♜g8+, but the text wins easily.

**41.d6 ♜xb2+ 42.♜xb2 ♙xb2 43.d7**

Now it is without check, Black can play ♙f6.

**43...♙f6**

**0-1**

This win allowed me to finish on a respectable 50% result.

□ **Peter Svidler**

■ **Sergey Tiviakov**

Turin Olympiad 2006

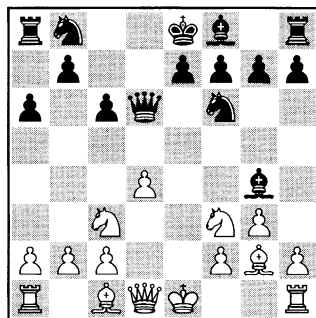
**1.e4 d5 2.exd5 ♜xd5 3.♙c3 ♜d6**

**4.d4 ♙f6 5.♙f3 a6 6.g3**

Peter chooses the most principled continuation. Other moves pose less threats for Black.

**6...♙g4 7.♙g2 c6**

7...♙c6 is the main continuation here, with a lot of theory and sharp lines, but it was not the point of the present game to play sharp. I decided to choose the safer and much rarer 7...c6.



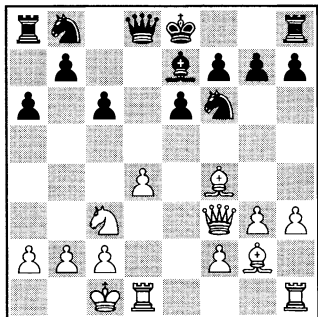
**8...♙f4!**

This move is new, but it is clearly stronger than 8.0-0. If White castles kingside, he has no chances for an opening advantage whatsoever.



**8...♖d8 9.h3**

White has no other useful moves and has to force the exchange on f3 immediately. Although he gains the bishop pair, Black's position is very solid.

**9...♙xf3 10.♖xf3 e6 11.0-0-0 ♙e7**

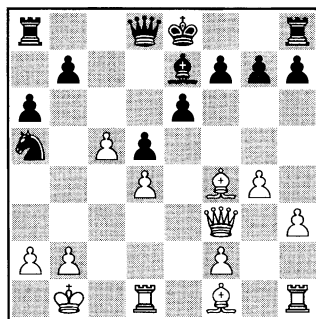
Here White has an lead in development, a space advantage and the pair of bishops. Despite all that it is not easy for White to obtain anything concrete. Meanwhile Black's play is easy, he is going to finish the development by ♘bd7, ♘d5 and then start advancing the pawns on the queenside – b7-b5 etc – with enough counterplay. In his turn White has to advance the kingside pawn trying to create the attack on the black king.

**12.g4 ♘bd7 13.♙b1 ♘d5 14.♘xd5?!**

After the game Peter was unhappy with this move. He felt he should have played 14.♙c1!?, but after 14...b5 followed by the advance of the other queenside pawns, Black creates enough counterplay. The position remains very complex, with chances for both sides.

**14...cxd5 15.c4 ♘b6**

Later Peter told me he missed that move. But it is the only black move in the position: it consolidates his centre, transferring the knight to c6, where he will attack the pawn d4.

**16.c5 ♘c4 17.♙f1 ♘a5**

If Black plays ♘c6, puts the bishop on the diagonal a1-h8 and afterwards opens the b-file, White would end up in trouble. He has to prevent the development of the black bishop on the diagonal a1-h8.

**18.♖g3**

Unfortunately for Black, White can prevent the realisation of the previously mentioned plan. He is threatening to play g4-g5 followed by the advance of the h pawn. Besides, he is also threatening to win the knight by ♙f4-c7.

**18...♙h4**

It took a lot of time to make this move. At first I was going to play 18...♘c6 or 18...♖c8 or even 18...♖d7 (with the idea ♖c8, ♙d8-c7). But then I decided to disturb White's plan and prevent the advance of the white pawns on the kingside.

**19.♖e3 h6 20.♙e5**

White is playing safe, deciding to exchange the bishops.

20.♙h2!? followed by f4-f5 was too risky. And according to Peter, White has more chances to lose than to win.

**20...♙f6 21.♙xf6 ♖xf6 22.f4 ♘c6 23.g5 ♖e7 24.h4 g6**

Black is not in a hurry to determine the position of the king and tries to refrain from castling as long as possible. One of the great advantages of the Scandinavian is that there is not much theory, there is much space for



creativity.

### 25. ♖h3

After 25.gxh6 0-0-0 Black will soon win the h6 pawn back, leaving White with too many weaknesses in his camp.

### 25...0-0-0

25...h5!? followed by 0-0, was possible.

### 26. ♖e2 hxg5 27.fxg5

After 27.hxg5 ♖c7, followed by ♜e7-f5, it is only White who can get into trouble.

### 27...e5 ½-½

After the exchange of the queens a draw is the most likely result. I decided to call it a day and offered a draw.

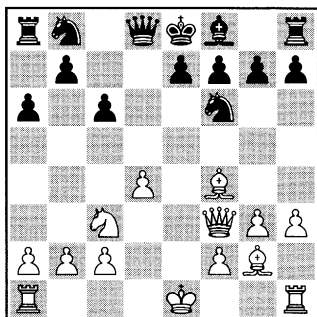
□ Mohamad Al-Modiahki

■ Sergey Tiviakov

Amsterdam 2006

1.e4 d5 2.exd5 ♖xd5 3.♜c3 ♖d6  
4.d4 ♜f6 5.♜f3 a6 6.g3 ♜g4 7.♜g2  
c6 8.♜f4 ♖d8 9.h3 ♜xf3 10.♖xf3

Or 10.♜xf3 e6 with equality.



### 10...♖xd4!?

In my game against Svidler I was afraid to take the pawn. Only after spending some time at home analysing this line I was ready to take it. It looks very dangerous, but in fact it is quite playable. Despite the fact that Black is behind in development he has no

weaknesses. Black needs only three moves to complete his development. Now the course of the game changes drastically. The move played by me against Svidler is also good, Black position is rock solid there.

### 11.0-0

11.♜e3!? deserves serious attention. For example, 11...♖d8 12.0-0 ♜bd7 13.♜ad1 (13.♜e4!?) 13...e6 14.♜e4 ♜xe4 15.♖xe4 with compensation for the pawn. 11.♜d1 ♖b6 12.0-0 e6 transposes into the line with 11.0-0.

### 11...e6 12.♜ad1

After 12.♜f1 ♖b6 13.♜e3 (13.♜a4!? is interesting) 13...♖c7 (13...♖a5!?) 14.♜e4!? (14.♜f4 ♖b6=) 14...♜xe4 15.♖xe4 ♜d7 16.♜d4 White has compensation for the pawn.

Or 12.♜c7 ♜bd7 13.♜f1 ♖c5 14.♖d3!? with some compensation.

### 12...♖b6 13.♜a4

Here again White had a choice between 13.♜e3!? and 13.♜d2!?

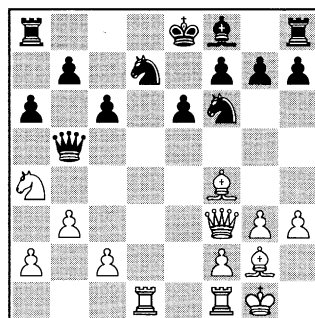
### 13...♖b5

After 13...♖b4 14.b3 ♜bd7 15.♜d2 ♖a3 16.♜c3 White gets a strong bishop on the diagonal a1-h8.

### 14.b3

14.♜c3!? ♖b6 15.♜a4 ♖b5 is a draw by repetition but 15...♖b4 – see 13...♖b4 – gives Black an option to fight.

### 14...♜bd7





Slowly but surely Black finishes his development. White has to do something active, otherwise he simply remains a pawn down.

#### 15.c4

Or 15.g4 h6 16.h4 0-0-0!? with slightly better chances for Black.

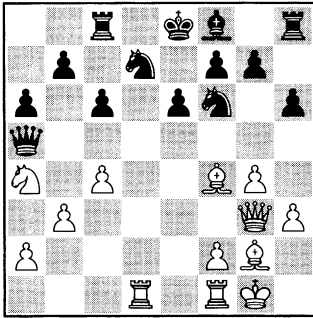
#### 15...♖a5 16.g4

Here the immediate 16.♘d3!? deserves attention.

#### 16...h6 17.♖g3

Or 17.h4 0-0-0!? with a plus for Black. He is simply a pawn up.

#### 17...♞c8



#### 18.♖e3!

White finds a very interesting resource. He is ready to sacrifice material to seize the initiative. 18.♘d3 ♖b4 19.♞fd1 b5 is bad for White.

#### 18...♞a8

After 18...b5 19.♖a7! bxa4 20.♖b7 ♖d8 21.♙xc6 White's compensation is very strong.

#### 19.♖g3 ♙e7!?

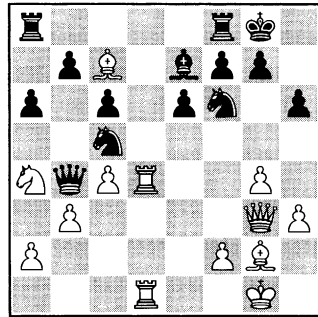
19...♞c8 is a draw. So if Black wants to play he has to calculate some sharp lines.

After 19...♖d8 20.♙c7 ♖c8 21.♘d3 ♙e7 22.♞fd1 White has good compensation.

#### 20.♙c7 ♖b4 21.♞d4

Black is better after 21.♘d3 0-0 22.♞fd1 ♙c5.

#### 21...0-0 22.♞fd1 ♙c5



#### 23.♙b6?!

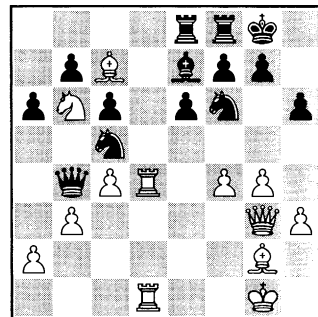
After the text move White's position becomes difficult. Better was 23.♙d6, but after 23...♙xd6 24.♖xd6 ♙fd7 (24...e5 25.♞d2 ♙fd7 26.♙xc5 ♙xc5 27.♖xe5 ♖ gives the pawn back) 25.g5 e5 26.♞g4 hxg5 27.♞xg5 f6 Black keeps the advantage.

#### 23...♞ae8

It was not easy to make this move. There was another good move: 23...e5!? 24.♖xe5 ♞ae8 25.♖g3 (25.♖h2 ♙e6 26.♞d2 ♙xc7 27.♖xc7 – transposes to 25.♖g3) 25...♙e6 26.♞d2 ♙xc7 27.♖xc7 ♖a5! with a huge advantage for Black.

#### 24.f4

24.♖e5 a5 ♖ planning ...♙a6.



#### 24...♙ce4!!

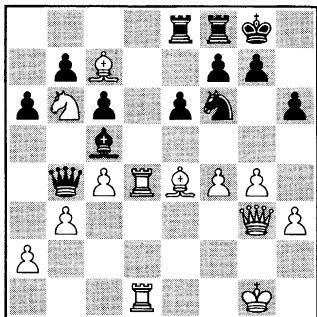
Playing 23...♞ae8 I already had in mind this beautiful and strong move. 24...a5 is also possible.



## 25. ♖xe4

After 25. ♖xe4 ♜xe4 26. ♖xe4 ♖c5+ 27. ♜h1 ♖xb6 28. ♖d6 ♞a5 29. ♖xf8 ♜xf8 Black is a pawn up and should win eventually.

## 25... ♖c5



## 26.a3?!

This move loses. Other moves are superior, but Black is always better:

– 26. ♜g2 ♖xd4 (26... ♜xe4? 27. ♖xe4 ♖xb6 28. ♖d6±; 26... ♖xb6?! 27. a3±) 27. ♖xd4 c5 (27... ♜xe4 28. ♖xe4 ♞e7 29. f5 e5 30. ♖xe5 ♞xb6 31. g5 ♞a5±) 28. g5 ♜h5 29. ♞f3 cxd4 30. ♞xh5 ♞d2+ 31. ♜f1 ♞c1+ loses as well.

– With the correct 26. ♖c2 ♞d8 (26... ♖xb6 27. ♖xb6 ♞xb6 28. g5 ♜h5 29. ♞f3 g6 30. gxb6 ♞d8 31. ♞e3 ♖xd4 32. ♖xd4∞) 27. ♞e3 ♖xd4 28. ♖xd4 ♜e8 29. ♖d8 ♖xb6 30. ♖xb6 ♞xb6 White could have prolonged his resistance, although his position is lost.

– 26. ♞e3 ♖xb6 27. ♖xb6 ♞xb6± was also preferable to the text.

## 26... ♞xa3

Now Black wins easily.

## 27. ♖c2

Black also wins following 27. ♞e3 ♜xe4 28. ♞xe4 ♞xb3 and 27. ♖f3 ♞d8.

**27... ♞d8! 28. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 29. ♜g2 ♖xd4**

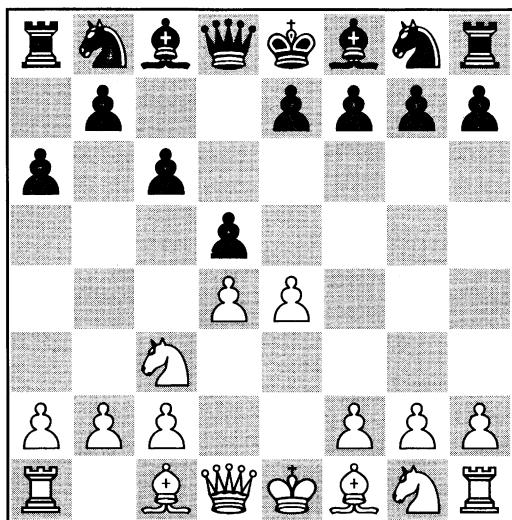
**0-1**



# CHAPTER 17

## *John van der Wiel*

### Caro-Kann with a Slav Touch



1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.♘c3 a6

The first person I witnessed playing 3...a6 was Jon Speelman. This was in 1997 in a Man vs Computer tournament: exactly the right place to do so!

If your opponent is well versed in main lines, or if he/she likes dynamic and open play, you may consider trying 3...a6.

Of course it can't be the greatest of moves objectively, but it does have its merits. Rather like in the Slav, where it has become quite trendy, a7-a6 is a useful waiting move. Black is striving for a closed game (so d5xe4 is not often intended), whilst retaining the option to put his bishop outside the pawn chain. If possible, on g4.

White has several reasonable replies, which

I shall subdivide into three sections:

I White just develops and allows Black to execute his plan.

II White builds up in such a way, that it is more difficult for Black to determine what his best plan is.

III White is immediately ready to sacrifice.

Each section will come with one annotated game, to give you some insight into how things might develop. In cases where Black doesn't seem to fare so well, I shall suggest possible improvements.



## I Just Developing (4.♟f3)

□ Dogan Reyhan  
 ■ Emir Dizdarevic

Izmir 2004

### 1.e4 c6 2.♟c3 d5 3.d4 a6 4.♟f3 ♟g4

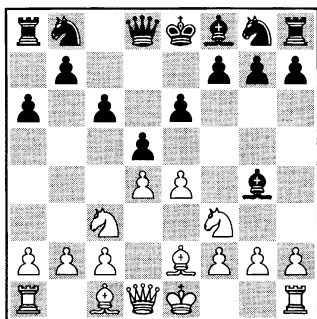
Black has achieved his first goal. The bishop is outside the pawn chain.

### 5.♟e2

A good alternative is 5.h3 ♟xf3 6.♞xf3. In a game Kutuzovic-Dizdarevic, Rabac 2003, a draw was agreed after 6...e6 7.♟d2! ♟f6 8.0-0-0 ♟b4 9.e5 ♟xc3?! 10.♟xc3 ♟e4 11.♟e1!. With 12.♞g4, 12.♞e3 or 12.h4 coming up and the knight on e4 in serious danger I would be more than slightly worried about Black's fate.

You may prefer 6...dxe4 (instead of 6...e6) 7.♞xe4 (7.♟xe4 ♞xd4 doesn't look like too much compensation. Compare this to Section III) 7...♟f6 8.♞d3 e6 with a solid game for Black. White may have a minimal plus, but in Beganovic-Jeremic, Neum 2003, Black was already more than comfortable after 9.♟e4?! ♟bd7 10.g3 ♟xe4 11.♞xe4 ♟f6 12.♞e3 ♟d6 13.♞g5 0-0 14.♟g2 ♞b6 15.c3 ♞b5! 16.♞xb5 axb5.

### 5...e6



### 6.0-0

The oldest move is 6.h3. In Zelcic-

Milivojevic, Belgrade 1989, possibly the stem game of the whole variation, White was successful after 6...♟h5 7.0-0 ♟e7 8.♟e3 ♟f6 9.e5 ♟fd7 10.♟e1 ♟g6 11.f4 c5 12.dxc5 ♟c6 13.♟h1 0-0 14.♟a4 f6 15.♟g4 ♟f7 16.♟d3 fxe5 17.fxe5 ♟dxe5 18.♟xe5 ♟xe5 19.♟b6 ♟c4 20.♟xc4 dxc4 21.♞e2 with a clear plus and a quick win.

In general, with nearly all his pawns on white squares, Black doesn't mind giving up his bishop after h2-h3. Therefore I prefer Speelman's approach:

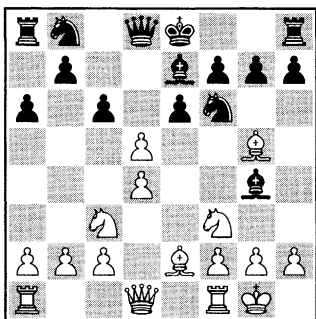
6...♟xf3 7.♟xf3 ♟f6 8.e5 ♟fd7 9.0-0 c5 10.♟xd5!? (not so crazy with White's centre crumbling) 10...exd5 11.♟xd5 ♟b6! 12.♟xb7 ♟a7 13.dxc5 (maybe 13.♞f3!? to play for initiative) 13...♞xd1 14.♞xd1 ♟xb7 15.cxb6 ♞xb6 16.b3 ♟e7 17.♟f4?! 0-0 18.♞d5 ♟e6 19.c4 ♟c6 20.♞ad1 ♟e8 21.♟g3 g5! (pawn e5 is too weak) 22.f4 gxf4 23.♟xf4 ♟f8 24.♟f2 ♟xe5 with a big advantage for Black, who went on to win in COMP Nightmare-Speelman, The Hague 1997.

Another idea for White is 6.e5, after which the thematic 6...c5 is playable. In Gavrilov-Gerovski, Skopje 1998, there followed: 7.♟e3 cxd4 8.♟xd4 ♟xe2 9.♟cxe2 ♞c7 10.f4 ♟e7 11.0-0. However, as White's lead in development gave him some chances, Black may elect to slow things down by means of 6...♟d7, perhaps 7...♟e7 and play ...c6-c5 at a more convenient time.

### 6...♟f6 7.♟g5 ♟e7 8.exd5?!

Whenever White takes on d5, barring special circumstances, Black is very happy to recapture with the c-pawn and pawn a6 always has a function. This position is in no way an exception. White should have played 8.e5 ♟fd7 9.♟xe7 ♞xe7, when White has some space and hopes of rearranging his pieces starting with 10.♟b1 or 10.♟e1. Black, on the other hand, has a clear plan with ...c6-c5 – endangering White's centre.





No doubt White was intending to continue with 8...cxd5 9.♘e5 but Black is one step ahead of him.

**8...♙xf3!**

Here the bishop pair won't mean a thing. It is easier to play against a bishop on f3, than a knight on e5.

**9.♙xf3 cxd5**

Thanks to his good pawn structure Black can already play for the advantage (using the 'minority attack').

**10.♞e1 0-0 11.♘e2 ♘c6 12.a4 ♘e8 13.♙xe7 ♘xe7 14.c4**

Not a bad idea to change the nature of the struggle before Black goes ♘e8-d6. Nevertheless Black maintains a plus.

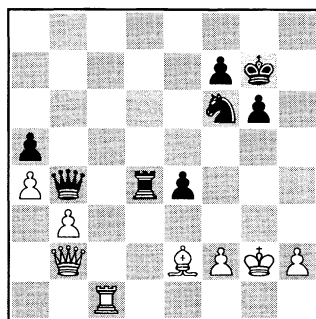
**14...dxc4 15.♙xb7 ♞a7 16.♙f3 ♘f6 17.♞c1 ♞c7 18.♘f4?!**

This won't do White much good. Simplifying with 18.b3 should offer better drawing chances.

**18...♙d6 19.g3 ♞d8 20.♙c2 ♘f5 21.♘e2 g6 22.b3 c3 23.♞ed1 ♙b4 24.♞d3 ♞dc8 25.♙g2 ♙g7 26.♙g1 a5 27.d5 e5 28.d6**

White is trying very hard to alleviate the pressure, but even after the text Black maintains an iron grip on the position.

**28...♙xd6 29.♞xc3 ♞xc3 30.♙xc3 ♘f5 31.♙b2 ♘d4 32.♙d1 h5 33.♙g2 h4 34.gxh4 ♞h8 35.♘b5 ♞xh4 36.♙xd4 ♞xd4 37.♙f3 e4 38.♙e2**



**38...e3!**

With a nasty threat: 39...♞d2 40.♞c2 ♙e4+. White should now have tried 39.♞c2 (when 39...♞d2 is still very strong), but, probably in time-trouble, he crumbles.

**39.♞c4 ♞xc4 40.♙xc4 ♙d2 41.♙xd2 exd2 42.♙e2 ♘d5 43.♙f3 f5 44.♙d1 ♘c3 45.♙c2 d1♙+ 46.♙xd1 ♘xd1 47.♙e2 ♘c3+ 48.♙d3 ♘e4 49.f3 ♙g5 50.b4 axb4 51.a5 ♙xf3 52.a6 ♘e5+ 53.♙d4 ♘c6+ 54.♙c5 b3**

White resigned.

## II Keep Black guessing (various flexible 4th moves)

In fact, White has already tried lots of different moves apart from 4.♘f3 (I) and 4.♙d3 (III). All of those will be mentioned in the following game: there are no less than eight of them!

□ **COMP Rebel**

■ **John van der Wiel**

Maastricht m 2001 (3)

**1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.♘c3 a6 4.♙e2**

As promised, a list of all known alternatives:

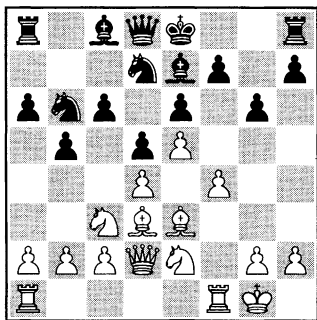
● 4.♙f4 and 4.♙e3. Here 4...g6 has been played, but I would recommend 4...b5, which discourages any plan involving queenside castling. In most cases Black will conduct the game in French style, with e7-e6



and at some point c6-c5 (if White has closed the centre).

- 4.a4 stops b7-b5, but gives Black a free hand. Thus, 4...dxe4 5.♟xe4 ♟f6 is a decent version of a main line. Playable is 4...e6 with ♟f8-b4 to come. Also reasonable is 4...g6. It's mainly a matter of taste.

- 4.f3 may turn out to be quite similar to 4.♟e3. A good practical example is Maciej-Gustafsson, ACP blitz 2004, which went: 4...e6 5.♟e3 b5! 6.♣d2 ♟d7 7.♟d3 ♟b6 8.♟ge2 ♟f6 9.0-0 ♟e7 10.e5 ♟fd7 11.f4 g6



12.a4?! (attacking on the wrong wing. I like 12.g4 and if 12...h5?! then 13.f5, so 12...c5 is more to the point) 12...♟c4! 13.♟xc4 bxc4 14.♠ab1 h5 15.b3 cxb3 16.♠xb3 a5! 17.♠fb1 ♟a6 and Black had excellent prospects.

- 4.g3 dxe4 (here, too, 4...e6 and 4...b5 are excellent alternatives. Not 4...g6 when 5.♟g2 would force an ugly-looking decision from Black) 5.♟xe4 ♟f5 (at least there is no g3-square, although White develops comfortably) 6.♟g2 e6 7.♟e2 ♟d7 8.0-0 ♟gf6 9.♟xf6+ ♟xf6 10.c4 ♟d6 11.♣b3 ♠b8 12.♟f4 (12.♟g5!?) 12...0-0 13.♠ad1 ♟g4 was Kozamernik-Dizdarevic, Ljubljana 2004, with nearly equal play and a draw in 83 moves.

- 4.h3 is not so testing for Black, either:  
– 4...♟f6?! 5.e5 ♟fd7 6.f4 (6.e6!? could be

quite dangerous for Black) 6...e6 7.♟f3 c5 8.♟e3 ♟c6 9.♣d2 was a very slightly improved French for White in M.Hansen-Borik, Germany Bundesliga B 1993/94.

- 4...e6 5.♟f3 ♟f6 (5...b5) 6.e5 ♟fd7 7.♟e2!? c5 8.dxc5?! (8.c3) 8...♟c6 9.♟f4 ♟xc5 10.♟c1 0-0 11.♟d3 ♟a7 12.♣d2 f6 led to satisfactory play for Black in Schuetze-Reuss, Osterburg ch-GER 2006.

- Another reliable plan is 4...b5.

- 4.e5 is one of White's best options, in my opinion. Now 4...♟f5 5.g4 ♟d7 (5...♟e6 6.♟h3! is too risky) may be playable, but it is an improved version for White on a main line in the Advance Variation.

Therefore 4...h5!? comes into consideration. After the strong 5.♟d3! Black can continue with 5...g6 and 6...♟h6 although admittedly this plan is rather eccentric.

Practice so far has seen:

- 4...g6 5.♟f3 (5.h3) 5...♟g4 6.♟e2 e6 7.♟e3 ♣c7 8.♟d2 ♟xe2 9.♟xe2 c5 10.c3 ♟c6 11.0-0 ♟ge7 12.♟g3! h5 13.h4 with a slight advantage for White, Sadikovic-Jeremic, Neum 2003.

- 4...e6 5.♟e3 ♣b6!? 6.♠b1 (6.♟a4) 6...c5 7.♟f3 ♟d7?! (better should be 7...♟c6 or even 7...♟h6!?) 8.♟e2 cxd4 9.♟xd4 ♟c5 10.b4? ♟xd4 (can Black afford 10...♟xb4!? 11.0-0 ♣a5 ?) 11.♟xd4 ♣d8 12.b5 and White was clearly better in D.Toth-Hever, Aggtelek 1998.

Summarizing: of this bunch 4.e5 may well be best. Against this, Black should probably (as in many cases) choose the French set-up with e7-e6. At least, the knight on c3 is not so great in an Advance French.

#### 4...b5 5.a3

The constructors of Rebel have done some clever work. White refuses to play a closed position, which wouldn't be the computer's forte. And yes, 5.exd5 cxd5 6.♟xd5 ♣xd5 7.♟f3 ♣e6+ 8.♟e3 ♠a7 would be good for Black.

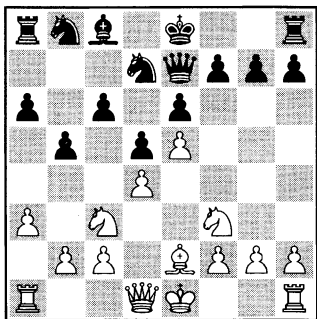


**5...e6 6.♟f3 ♞f6 7.e5**

Here I expected 7...♟g5. I don't believe a 21st century computer would view 7...h6 8.♟h4 g5 as a problem.

**7...♟fd7 8.♟g5! ♟e7**

Not willing to risk 8...f6 9.exf6, or 8...♟b6 9.b4! (or even 9.♞a2 c5 10.c3), when Black will regret not having played ♟f8-e7.

**9.♟xe7 ♟xe7****10.b4!?**

Surprising, coming from a computer program, but certainly not bad. Without c6-c5 Black has to find other ways to live. 10.♞a2 c5 11.c3 ♞c6 would be approximately equal, with ...f6 coming some day.

**10...a5 11.♞a2**

After 11.♞b1 axb4 12.axb4 ♞a6 13.♞a2 ♞ac5!? Black develops enough play.

**11...axb4 12.axb4 0-0 13.♟d3 f6 14.exf6!**

14.♟e2 would run into 14...♟xb4+!? or 14...♞xa2!? or first 14...fxe5.

**14...gxf6 15.0-0 ♟f7**

Not 15...e5 16.♞h4!.

**16.♞e1 ♞f8 17.♞h4**

White is playing this phase very well. His activities on the kingside leave Black no peace.

**17...♟d8 18.♞e3**

A reasonable alternative was 18.♞c3.

**18...♟g7 19.♞g3 ♟e7 20.♟f3**

Please note: White has the threat of 21.♞e1 ♞xa2 22.♞f5.

Even stronger, however, was 20.♟e2!, also threatening 21.♞f5 and after 20...♟f7 or 20...♞a7 following up with 21.c3 and 22.♞e1.

**20...♞xg3 21.♟xg3+ ♟g7 22.♟d6 ♟d7 23.♟f4 ♟g7 24.♞f3**

The a-file pin is Black's only trump. What if 24.♞e1 tries to eliminate it: 24...♟g5! (24...♞xa2 25.♟xb8 is in White's favour) 25.♟c7 ♟xh4 26.♟xc8 (26.♞e3 ♟d7) 26...♟xd4!? and Black is probably alright.

**24...♟d7 25.♟c7!?**

Again: 25.♞e1 or not? There may follow: 25...e5! 26.dxe5 ♞e6 27.♟h4 fxe5! and Black is still about to win a piece. But how good will the compensation be after 28.♞c3 e4? Lord knows, or Rebel.

**25...♟e8 26.♟d8**

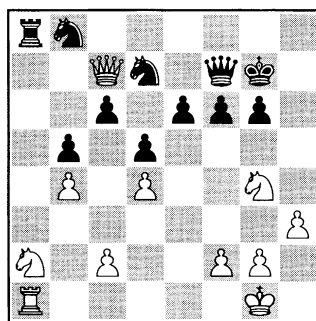
With a funny counter-pin on the back rank.

**26...♟g6 27.h3!?**

27.♞e1 looked more natural.

**27...♟f7 28.♟xg6 hxg6 29.♞h2 ♟g7 30.♞g4 ♞fd7**

30...♞h7 would complete the preparations for ♟f7-d7, but after 31.♟d6! ♟d7 32.♟f4 or ♟g3 the knight is poorly placed.

**31.♟c7****31...e5!**

The right countermeasure despite limited



time. On 31...♖e5 White had the diabolical 32.♙xf6!.

**32.♙b7?!**

This temporarily wins a pawn and starts the variation that I calculated and hoped for. After 32.dxe5(!) ♜xe5 33.♙d6 the ♜a2 is in some trouble, but Black's king isn't secure and the position would be unclear.

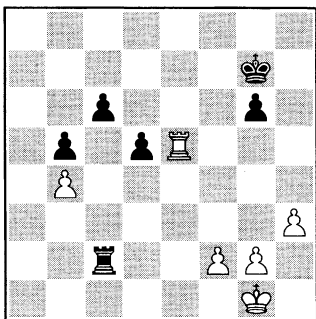
**32...♙a3 33.dxe5 fxe5 34.♙xe5 ♜xe5 35.♙xb8 ♙f6! 36.♙e1**

36.c3 may look logical, but there is a great reply: 36...♙d3 37.♙g3 ♙xb4! with three working pins. Yes, humans can calculate too!

**36...♙a2 37.♙xe5**

Because 37.♙xe5 fails to 37...♙a1+ 38.♙h2 ♙f4+.

**37...♙xe5 38.♙xe5 ♙xc2**



A better rook ending is the fruit of calculation.

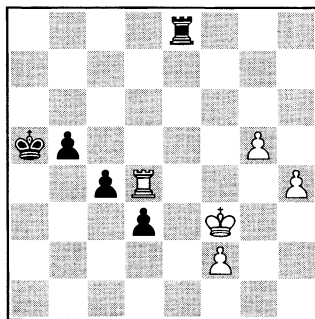
**39.♙e1?**

Right at the beginning of the ending Rebel makes a big mistake. Instead of the far too passive text 39.♙e6 was called for. An example: 39...♙c1+ 40.♙h2 ♙f7 41.♙d6 ♙e7 42.♙xg6 d4 43.♙g4! ♙c4 44.♙g3 ♙xb4 45.♙f3 or 45.h4 and the game is far from over.

**39...♙f6 40.♙f1 d4 41.♙e8 ♙c4 42.♙c8 ♙e7 43.♙e2 ♙d6 44.♙d8+ ♙c7 45.♙g8 ♙xb4 46.♙d3 c5 47.♙g7+**

**♙b6 48.♙xg6+ ♙a5 49.h4 ♙b3+ 50.♙e4 d3 51.♙d6 c4 52.g4 ♙b2! 53.g5 ♙e2+ 54.♙f3 ♙e8 55.♙d4**

Having seen that 55.g6 b4 56.h5 c3! wins for Black.



**55...b4!**

Even more convincing than 55...♙b4.

**56.♙xc4 b3 57.♙c1 b2 58.♙d1**

If 58.♙b1, then 58...d2 59.g6 ♙a4 etc.

**58...♙b4 59.♙f4**

Or 59.g6 ♙c3 60.h5 ♙c2 61.♙h1 b1♙! 62.♙xb1 ♙xb1 63.g7 d2 curtains.

**59...♙c3**

White resigned.

### III The Danger (4.♙d3)

I don't believe in advertising variations without pointing out the dangers, so here it is: this Section III comes with a special warning! White plays a move that is positionally non-committal, implying that he is ready to sacrifice a pawn after 4...dxe4 5.♙xe4 (5.♙xe4 ♙f6 is less fearsome). The question is: should Black eat or not?

□ Vladimir Moliboga

■ Igor Dmitriev

Litomyšl 1994

**1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.♙c3 a6 4.♙d3 dxe4**

If Black is not so keen on material and wants to play a more closed position, there are:

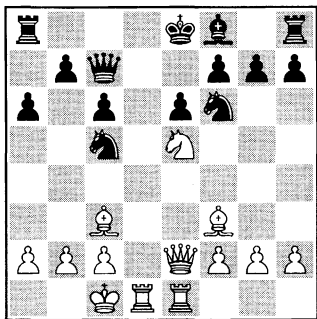


● 4...e6?! 5.♟f3 ♞d7 6.0-0 ♞e7 7.e5 ♞c7 (7...c5!?) 8.♞e2 c5 9.c3 ♞c6 10.♞g3 ♞e7 11.♞h5! g6 12.♞g7+ ♞d8 13.♞g5 ♞xg5 14.♞xg5+ ♞e7 15.♞g4 with a big initiative for White, Schuerer-Voegeli, Silvaplane 1993.

● 4...g6!? 5.e5 (5.h3 and 5.♞e3 are worthy alternatives) 5...♞g7 6.♞f3 (6.h3 or 6.f4) 6...♞g4 7.h3 ♞d7? happened in Altermatt-Voegeli, Silvaplane 1993. Naturally Black should have opted for 7...♞xf3 8.♞xf3 ♞d7 or 8...e6 with a reasonable game.

### 5.♞xe4 ♞xd4 6.♞f3 ♞d5

Possibly even more important for the theoretical verdict is the game Fressinet-Bricard, Bischwiller 1999: 6...♞d8(!) 7.♞e2 ♞f5 8.♞d2 ♞xe4!? (8...e6 9.0-0-0) 9.♞xe4 ♞f6 10.0-0-0 ♞bd7 (10...♞xe4 11.♞xe4 ♞d5 looks reasonable for Black, but maybe White can do better with 11.♞f4!, e.g. 11...♞a5 12.♞xe4 ♞xa2 13.♞b4! etc.) 11.♞c3 ♞c7 12.♞e5 e6 13.♞he1 ♞c5 14.♞f3

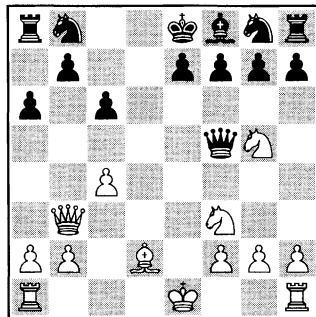


14...♞d8 (Black had several tough choices in this game. 14...♞d5!? looks like a good alternative here, for instance 15.♞xd5 cxd5 16.♞xd5 exd5 17.♞g6+ ♞e4! 18.♞xh8 0-0-0, which fails to impress for White, or 15.♞d4 0-0-0 16.♞c4 ♞d7 with an unclear position) 15.♞c4! ♞xd1+ 16.♞xd1 ♞cd7 17.♞e5 ♞e7 18.♞xd7 ♞xd7 19.♞xg7 ♞g8

20.♞c3 ♞xh2 (or else Black is simply worse) 21.g3 ♞h6+ 22.♞b1 ♞f6 23.♞e5 ♞f8 24.♞c7 ♞c5 25.b4 ♞xf2 26.♞d7! ♞g6 27.♞h5 1-0.

### 7.c4 ♞d8 8.♞eg5 ♞f5 9.♞xf5 ♞a5+ 10.♞d2 ♞xf5 11.♞b3!

Demonstrating a serious disadvantage of 6...♞d5.



### 11...♞c8

It is hard to imagine that Black will go unscathed after 11...b5!?, but at least in most cases he threatens to follow up with 12...h6. 12.0-0-0(!) h6 13.♞a5 looks like more than Black can digest, though, so anyone in favour of 12...f6!?

### 12.0-0-0 ♞d7

Now 12...h6 13.♞xf7! ♞xf7 14.♞e5+ is surely suicidal.

### 13.♞a5!

Introduces threats involving taking on f7 and/or d7.

### 13...♞gf6 14.♞he1

Even 14.c5 is dangerous, but 14...♞d5 saves Black. After the strong text Black can only choose between evils.

### 14...h6?!

This gives White the opportunity to win in great style, but 14...e6 wouldn't be much different, see: 15.♞xe6! fxe6 16.♞xe6+ ♞f7 (16...♞e7 17.♞de1 is hopeless) 17.♞g5+ ♞g8 (or 17...♞g6 18.♞d3+! and the attack is irresistible) 18.♞xf6! ♞c5 (after



18...♟xf6 19.c5+ ♞d5 20.♞xd5 Black can resign and 18...gxf6 19.c5+ ♟g7 20.♞f7+ ♟h6 21.♞e6! is curtains, too) 19.♞f3! gxf6 20.♞xf6 ♞e8 21.♞c3 with a beautiful win for White.

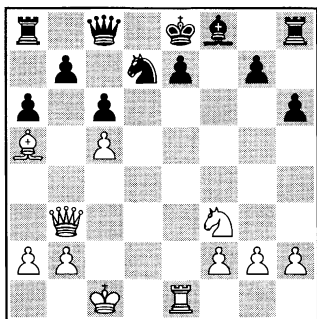
Black's best chance was 14...c5(!) 15.♞e5 (even here 15.♞xf7 is interesting) 15...♞xe5 16.♞d8+ ♞xd8 17.♞xd8 ♞xd8 18.♞xe5 ♞d7! (19.♞f5 g6) and White is 'only' much better.

**15.♞xd7!**

Beautiful, but 15.♞xf7 is also good.

**15...♞xd7 16.♞xf7 ♟xf7 17.c5+ ♟e8**

17...♟g6 18.♞d3+ ♟f7 19.♞c4+ could lead to the game position.



Now White has done a lot of damage for a rook, but can he win?

**18.♞d3 ♟f7**

Forced, as 18...♞xc5 19.♞g6+ ♟d7 20.♞e5+ is mate and 18...♞f6 19.♞g6+ ♟d7 20.♞e5+ ♟e6 21.♞f7+ or ♞c4+ wins easily for White.

**19.♞c4+! ♟e8 20.♞e4**

After this sweet manoeuvre things are clear: 20...♟f7 doesn't parry the threat of 21.♞g6+, since 21.♞e6+ ♟e8 22.♞g6 mates.

**20...♞e5**

No choice, but after this Black clearly fights for a lost cause.

**21.♞xe5 ♞e5 22.♞d3!**

With 23.♞g6 not being the only threat, as we shall see.

**22...h5 23.♞c4**

Even stronger.

**23...♞h6+**

Not 23...♞d5 24.♞g6+ etc.

**24.♞d2 ♞h7 25.♞d6+ ♟d7 26.♞h3+**

And as the bishop will reappear on a5, Black resigned.

Who is this Moliboga? I hope 'moli' means something like 'inspired', because he certainly conducted this game with divine inspiration.

The above may frighten you out of playing 3...a6, but it shouldn't really. First of all, there is the option of quiet development with 4...g6. Secondly, I believe that 4...dxe4 is playable (see the notes to the included game Fressinet-Bricard) and that it is the most important move in a theoretical sense. Moreover: have you really lived when you have never taken a centre pawn? But hear my advice: first try this at home!



# CHAPTER 18

## Who is Who

A bit of Grünfeld bashing has always been popular among SOS authors. However, a master always finds his grandmaster. **Ian Rogers** presents no less than three SOS weapons in one chapter. Read all about the ideas of Alan Goldsmith. Alan Who?

Dutch GM **Erwin l'Ami** is known for his adherence to main lines. So if he is willing to play an early queen move there must be something to it. Erwin analyzes a former pet line of Tony Miles to conclude that Black is OK after 1.e4 c6 2.c4 e5 3.♟f3 ♞a5.

The Hyper-Accelerated Dragon can be annoying to meet – especially for all 3.♟b5(+) lovers. Just like Spassky you might feel that with 2...g6 Black is simply asking for 3.h4. The authors of *Accelerated Dragons*, the Americans **John Donaldson** and **Jeremy Silman**, saw reason enough to go where no author has gone before.

Are you looking for a repertoire, or a surprise weapon, against 1.d4? **Arthur Kogan's** 1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 b6 is a sophisticated mix between the Grünfeld and the Queen's Indian, with some Budapest Gambit ideas thrown in as well.

Be warned, the Israeli grandmaster has another, more primitive, side to his personality. Check out his Tarzan Attack too!

The principles of good opening play forbid you to play twice with the same piece in the opening. Enter the Hungarian Baron Ladislaus Döry with his defence 1.d4 ♟f6 2.♟f3 ♟e4. Noblesse oblige. It was none

other than Paul Keres who won the 1937 theme tournament in Vienna as **Adrian Mikhalchishin** reports.

Karpov's former trainer also reveals a secret in the main tabiya position of the Closed Ruy Lopez after 9.h3. The young Polish IM Grzegorz Gajewski is in the habit of playing 9...♞b8 and he has found Spanish expert Vladimir Malaniuk on his side.

If you're looking for a surprise weapon versus the Open Games, but feel that Nakamura's 2.♞h5 is one bridge too far, then **Glenn Flear** has just the repertoire for you. The Englishman feels that it makes perfect sense to spice up the Vienna and the Bishop's Opening with some early queen moves.

A propos queen moves. How about the rather curious 8.♞d2 in the Slav? **Dorian Rogozenko**, an expert in this venerable defence, confesses that he had never seen the move until Mikhalevski beat Bareev at the 2006 Olympiad.

In SOS-4 Arthur Kogan revealed his secrets in the Scandinavian with 3...♞d8. **Sergey Tiviakov** now does the same for the 3...♞d6 Scandinavian. He relates how his life, and his repertoire, will never be the same again after an opening disaster with white.

In the days when playing the computer could be a joyful experience, **John van der Wiel** watched Jon Speelman play 3...a6 in the Caro-Kann versus the machine. In cycling they would call this strategy *sur place*. The Dutch grandmaster explains that it is better to get your bishop outside the pawn chain.





# The SOS Competition

PLAY THE BEST SOS GAME, SEND IT TO US  
AND WIN **€ 250,-** (OR \$ 275)

---

- submitted games should start with an SOS from this Volume
- submitted games should include information about where and when it was played and at what time rate (classical or rapid only)
- entries have to be submitted to New In Chess before September 30, 2007
- New In Chess contributors are excluded from participation
- New In Chess obtains the right to use the submitted games for its publications

## Prize:

---

€ 250 (or \$ 275) and the winning game will appear in  
Volume 8 of Secrets of Opening Surprises

## Games should be submitted to:

New In Chess, P.O. Box 1093, 1810 KB Alkmaar  
The Netherlands or email to [editors@newinchess.com](mailto:editors@newinchess.com)





## SECRETS OF OPENING SURPRISES

brings you a wide variety of unusual opening ideas. They may seem outrageous at first sight, but have proven to be perfectly playable. An **SOS** deviates very early from the regular lines in a mainstream opening, usually even before move six! That is why it is so easy to actually bring the variation on the board. You will baffle your opponent without having studied large quantities of stuffy theory.

### What people say about **SOS**:

"**SOS** is a sparkling star  
in the grey sky of theory."

HEINZ BRUNTHALER IN **ROCHADE EUROPA**



"The variations can be exceedingly  
difficult if you are not prepared."

CARSTEN HANSEN AT **CHESSCAFE**



"A refreshing book, full of rare, uncommon  
but sound ideas that can spice up the opening  
repertoire of any tournament player."

THE WASHINGTON POST



"No matter what you play,  
you will find something exciting here."

CHESS TODAY

#### Editor:

**Jeroen Bosch**

With the opening secrets of:

Ian Rogers

Sergey Tiviakov

Jeroen Bosch

Erwin I'Ami

John Donaldson

Jeremy Silman

Arthur Kogan

Adrian Mikhalchishin

Glenn Flear

Dorian Rogozenko

John van der Wiel

**Games**

**Chess**

**€ 19.95**

**\$ 21.95**

**£ 13.50**